

DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 143 238

FL 008 821

AUTHOR Cooper, Paul V.; Rice, Oliver  
 TITLE Djerma Basic Course.  
 INSTITUTION Peace Corps, Washington, D.C.  
 PUB DATE [66]  
 CONTRACT PC-72-556  
 NOTE 314p.; Best copy available

EDRS PRICE MF-\$0.83 HC-\$16.73 Plus Postage.  
 DESCRIPTORS \*African Languages; Audiolingual Methods;  
 Autoinstructional Aids; Grammar; Instructional  
 Materials; \*Intensive Language Courses; \*Language  
 Instruction; Language Skills; Pattern Drills  
 (Language); \*Second Language Learning; Tape  
 Recordings; \*Textbooks  
 IDENTIFIERS Dialogs (Language Learning); \*Djerma

ABSTRACT This textbook presents the essential structural features of Djerma as it is currently spoken in the western region of Niger. The course is organized into 30 units which constitute instructional material for from 300 to 400 hours of classroom instruction. It is specifically designed for intensive training programs of approximately 4 to 5 hours per day, or 30 hours per week, extending over a period of 10 to 12 weeks. Thirty tape recordings, containing the dialogues and drills of the 30 units, were developed to accompany the text. These should be used regularly by the student in a language laboratory or with a tape recorder for reinforcement of what has been learned in the classroom. In the ideal learning situation, the student will have access to: (1) a native speaker of Djerma who will act as a teacher and as a model of his language whom the student will imitate in intensive drill sessions; and (2) a linguistic scientist who will answer questions about the structure of the language. The course is, however, to a large degree self-instructional, and the student who lacks the opportunity for formal classroom instruction can make considerable progress by diligent use of text and tapes. (Author/CLK)

\*\*\*\*\*  
 \* Documents acquired by ERIC include many informal unpublished \*  
 \* materials not available from other sources. ERIC makes every effort \*  
 \* to obtain the best copy available. Nevertheless, items of marginal \*  
 \* reproducibility are often encountered and this affects the quality \*  
 \* of the microfiche and hardcopy reproductions ERIC makes available \*  
 \* via the ERIC Document Reproduction Service (EDRS). EDRS is not \*  
 \* responsible for the quality of the original document. Reproductions \*  
 \* supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original. \*  
 \*\*\*\*\*

ED143238

DJERMA BASIC COURSE

prepared by

English Language Services, Inc.  
800 Eighteenth St., N.W.  
Washington, D. C.

These materials were prepared by  
English Language Services, Inc.  
for the Peace Corps under  
Contract No. PC-72-556.

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH  
EDUCATION & WELFARE  
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF  
EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRO-  
DUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM  
THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGIN-  
ATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS  
STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT  
OFFICIAL NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF  
EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS  
MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

Peace Corps

TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES  
INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC) AND  
THE ERIC SYSTEM CONTRACTORS

FL008821

## PREFACE

Djerma Basic Course was prepared in the field by Paul V. Cooper, linguist, and Oliver Rice, writer and editor. The structural analysis was aided by reference to Practical Method for the Study of the Zerma Language, Revised Edition, 1965, developed by the Mission Chrétienne d'Afrique, Niamey, Niger. Extensive interviews were conducted with Moussa Seini, the principal informant, and with the following native speakers: Marcel Alimatou, Birama Keita, Terese Keita, and Souna Mahamane. The voices heard on the tapes are those of Moussa Durafey, Kadijito Keita, Terese Keita, Souna Mahamane, and Moussa Seini. The recordings were made in the studios of Radio Niger, Niamey.

## INTRODUCTION

For Instructor and Students

### Course Description

Djerma Basic Course presents the essential structural features of Djerma as it is currently spoken in the western region of Niger. The course is organized into 30 units which constitute instructional material for from 300 to 400 hours of classroom instruction. It is specifically designed for intensive training programs of approximately 4 to 5 hours per day, or 30 hours per week, extending over a period of 10 to 12 weeks.

Accompanying Djerma Basic Course are 30 tape recordings containing the dialogues and drills of the 30 units. These should be used regularly by the student in a language laboratory or with a tape recorder for reinforcement of what has been learned in the classroom.

In the ideal learning situation, the student will have access to (1) a native speaker of Djerma who will act as a teacher and, as a model of his language whom the student will imitate in intensive drill sessions; and (2) a linguistic scientist who will answer questions about the structure of the language. The course is, however, to a large degree self-instructional, and the student who lacks the opportunity for formal classroom instruction can make considerable progress by diligent use of text and tapes.

## Methodology

Units 1-20 contain Dialogues, Structural Drills, and Phonology Drills. Units 21-30 contain Dialogues and Structural Drills only. Where appropriate, there are notes on the Dialogues, Structural Drills, and Phonology Drills.

In accordance with the principle that language learning is over-learning, each unit contains exhaustive drills based on the utterances of the dialogues. The student is thus provided with material through which he can internalize Djerma structures by manipulating them in their variety of forms and combinations, thus gradually acquiring the habits of automatic response and control necessary for fluency in the language.

## General Comments

Use normal conversational speed. Do not speak more slowly than your instructor, and do not ask him to slow down his normal speech tempo. With repeated, careful listening, facility in comprehension will increase. This is the best preparation for understanding the rapid stream of speech produced by native speakers.

Use Djerma almost exclusively in the classroom. At least 80% of classroom time should be spent hearing and speaking the target language. Talk about the language should be kept to a minimum.

Master the material as you go. Review frequently. Progress will be

most rapid if the material of each unit is thoroughly learned before going on to the next.

Usage is the criterion for what is acceptable in language. Native speakers of a language often differ as to what is acceptable, depending on their dialects. If your instructor pronounces certain words in a manner different from that indicated in the text or on the tape, imitate your instructor but be aware of existing differences.

### Procedures

#### Dialogues

Most of the units begin with a series of dialogues which contain the basic material of the unit. These dialogues should be thoroughly memorized. To this end, imitate your instructor and/or work carefully with the tapes.

Dialogues are given with either their English literal or contextual equivalents. The letters "A" and "B" appearing to the left of each complete utterance represent different speakers. New words or phrases are listed separately just above the complete utterances.

It is suggested that the instructor begin a new unit by reading aloud the complete utterances of the first dialogue at least three times. Next, he should read aloud the entire dialogue, including new vocabulary, at least twice. During this time, students' books should be closed. Students should hear each utterance before seeing it. Then the instructor

should model each utterance in turn and have the entire class repeat the utterance chorally at least three times.

When the instructor is satisfied that the choral repetition is reasonably accurate in pronunciation, intonation, and stress, and that the speed is adequate, he should drill each student individually on the same utterance as many times as necessary to produce satisfactory performance. If the instructor finds that a student has considerable difficulty with any portion of an utterance, even after several attempts, he should go on to the next student and return at another time to the student who is having difficulty.

When the entire class has gone through all the dialogues of the unit chorally and individually, with books closed, the students should open their books and listen to the instructor read the complete dialogues again, comparing their aural impressions with the printed page and noting the English equivalents. The instructor should then read each utterance and have the students read after him at least twice.

At this point two students should participate in the dialogue, taking parts A and B respectively and practising it until it is virtually memorized. This procedure should continue around the class until each student has played both roles.

If questions arise at this point concerning why the Djerma utterance is as it is, the instructor should not allow himself to be diverted from his primary task of serving as the best model of the language and as drill master. He should not attempt a discussion of the language's

history but should merely state that this is the way the Djerma express themselves. The linguistic scientist and/or the notes on the dialogues will answer essential questions concerning the structural items presented.

### Phonology Drills

Phonology Drills provide drills on the important phonological features of Djerma. They may be used by the instructor in the classroom in guided imitation drill sessions similar to those employed for the dialogues. Alternately, the instructor may choose only those items drilling sounds which have proved difficult for his students. The Phonology Drills of Units 1-4 are essentially syllable drills and are built up in reverse order to preserve the normal intonation features of the sentence.

### Structural Drills

Structural Drills provide exhaustive practice in the structures found in the dialogues. There are substitution drills, response drills, and expansion drills. Each item should be thoroughly drilled until the students can say the drills automatically and understand the meaning of each one. Mastery of the drills means that the student can understand and produce the drill items fluently and automatically with his book closed.

Substitution Drills. The instructor reads aloud the first or model utterance of a drill, invites student repetition, reads the next utter-

ance, which contains the substitution item, again invites student repetition, continuing in this manner through the entire drill so that each student is able to repeat each drill item at least twice.

At this point the instructor again gives the first or model utterance. He then gives only the cue item (underlined substitution item) of the next utterance and calls on a student to give the complete utterance. Similarly, the instructor provides each of the following cue items in turn and designates other students to respond. An example of single-item substitution follows.

Instructor: Wodin ga ti ay wone. . . . iri . . .

Student: Wodin ga ti iri wone.

Instructor: . . . a . . .

Student: Wodin ga ti a wone.

Instructor: . . . i . . .

Student: Wodin ga ti i wone.

Instructor: . . . ay . . .

Student: Wodin ga ti ay wone.

Following is an example of double-item substitution.

Instructor: Ni zen da'ga ay? . . . aran . . . i'ga . . .

Student: Aran zen da'ga i'ga?

Instructor: . . . a . . . iri . . .

Student: A zen da'ga iri?

Instructor: . . . iri . . . i'gey . . .

Student: Iri zen da'ga i'gey?

Instructor: . . . ni . . . ay . . .

Student: Ni zen da'ga ay?

Response Drills. The instructor works through a response drill with the students for familiarization as with the Substitution Drills. Then he again gives the first utterance and designates a student to provide the appropriate response. An example follows.

Instructor: I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda?

Student: I ga hima ga tyere ga.

Instructor: I fo se no alborey'go ga goy tyere banda?

Student: I ga dona ga tyere ga.

Instructor: I fo se no alborey go ga goy tyere banda?

Student: I ga goy ga tyere ga.

As a variation, two or more students can conduct a response drill among themselves, then designate other students to conduct the next one. As a further variation, and to check mastery of the material, the instructor may give a response and designate a student to give the utterance that triggered it.

Expansion Drills. The instructor works through an expansion drill with the students for familiarization as with the Substitution and Response Drills. Then he again gives the first utterance followed by each expansion cue in turn and designates students to give the expanded sentences. An example follows.

Instructor: Kolkoti no iri ga duma. . . . damsi . . .

Student: Damsi nda kolkoti no iri ga duma.

Instructor: . . . hayni . . .

Student: Hayni nda damsi nda kolkoti no iri ga duma.

Instructor: Now give the original unexpanded utterance.

Student: Kolkoti no iri ga duma.

### Phonology and Orthography

There are several orthographic systems currently in use for the representation of Djerma sounds. Since very little written material exists, and since most of that is being produced by the Service de l'Alphabetisation et de l'Education des Adultes of the Niger Ministry of Education, it has seemed advisable to adopt a modified form of the system used by the Service. The only difference is that, where the Service uses the circumflex accent over vowels and n to represent nasalization and velarization, we have used an apostrophe following the letter in question. Since elision of vowels has not been indicated in the text in order not to obscure the unelided forms of elided words, no confusion should result from the use of the apostrophe in place of the circumflex accent. The orthography employed represents the sounds of Djerma quite consistently, there being almost always a one-for-one correspondence between sound and symbol.

Stress. Many Djerma utterances contain a succession of monosyllables more or less evenly stressed. In most two-syllable words, stress is on the first syllable. The last syllable of some two-syllable words,

however, appears to receive as much stress as the first syllable, if not more. In three- and four-syllable words, primary stress is on the first syllable with a secondary stress on the third syllable.

Tone. The function of tone in Djerma is a subject in need of more study. Djerma words exist having two or more different meanings, which appear to be distinguished, in isolation, only by a difference in tone. However, when these same words are uttered within the context of a sentence, the tonal distinction is blurred, and it is often difficult to detect the difference in tone heard previously when the word was uttered in isolation. Tonal distinctions must be learned as they occur. In general, the context is the best guide for understanding the meaning of individual words.

Vowel and Consonant Length. Vowel length and consonant length are in many cases phonemic, i. e., there is a difference in meaning between a word uttered with a short vowel and the same word uttered with a long vowel; likewise, between a word uttered with a single consonant and the same word uttered with a double consonant. For such contrasts, see the note to the Phonology Drills of Unit 12, p. 106.

Tonal and length contrasts are presented in the Phonology Drills of Units 12-20.

## Vowels (Oral)

<u>Letter</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Example</u>
i	High front unrounded, unglided; resembles sound of <u>i</u> in "machine."	<u>i</u> 'they'
e	Lower-mid front, lax; resembles sound of <u>e</u> in "let."	<u>ne</u> 'here'
a	Low central unrounded; resembles sound of <u>a</u> in "father."	<u>a</u> 'he/she'
o	Lower-mid back rounded, lax; resembles sound of <u>o</u> in "roll."	<u>fo</u> 'which'
u	High back rounded, unglided; resembles sound of <u>u</u> in "jute."	<u>fu</u> 'house'

## Vowels (Nasal)

i'	High front unrounded, unglided, nasal; resembles sound of <u>i</u> in "ink."	<u>i'ga</u> 'he/she' (emphatic)
e'	Lower-mid front, lax, nasal; resembles sound of French <u>in</u> in "vin."	<u>de'di</u> 'fire'
a'	Low central unrounded, nasal; resembles sound of French <u>an</u> in "quand."	<u>ya'</u> (plural marker)
o'	Lower-mid back rounded, lax, nasal; resembles sound of French <u>on</u> in "bon."	<u>bo'</u> 'on'
u'	High back rounded, unglided, nasal; resembles sound of French <u>ou</u> in "poumon."	<u>hu'kuna</u> 'today'

## Consonants

p	Voiceless bilabial stop; like sound of <u>p</u> in "spin."	<u>po'piter</u> 'potato'
---	--	--------------------------

<u>Letter</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Example</u>
b	Voiced bilabial stop; like sound of <u>b</u> in "book."	<u>ban</u> 'to finish'
t	Voiceless dental stop; like sound of French <u>t</u> in "tu."	<u>to</u> 'to arrive'
d	Voiced dental stop; like sound of French <u>d</u> in "dire."	<u>di</u> 'to see'
ty	Voiceless palatal stop; no exact equivalent; sound varies in pronunciation between the <u>ty</u> of "don't ya" and the <u>ky</u> sound in "cute."	<u>tyi'di</u> 'plus'
dy	Voiced palatal stop; no exact equivalent; sound varies in pronunciation between the <u>dy</u> of "d'ya hear" and the <u>gy</u> of "I dig ya."	<u>dyiri</u> 'year'
k	Voiceless velar stop; like sound of <u>k</u> in "skiing."	<u>ka</u> 'to come'
g	Voiced velar stop; like sound of <u>g</u> in "gas."	<u>goro</u> 'to sit'
m	Voiced bilabial nasal; like sound of <u>m</u> in "mama."	<u>mo</u> 'also'
n	Voiced alveolar nasal; like sound of <u>n</u> in "no."	<u>ne</u> 'here'
ny	Palatal nasal; like sound of <u>ny</u> in "canyon."	<u>nya</u> 'mother'
nʰ	Dorso-velar nasal resonant; like sound of <u>ng</u> in "sing," but, unlike English, sometimes occurs initially.	<u>n'wa</u> 'to eat'

<u>Letter</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Example</u>
l	Voiced alveolar lateral; like sound of <u>l</u> in "lose."	<u>lamba</u> 'number'
r	Voiced apico-alveolar flap; like sound of <u>r</u> in standard British pronunciation of "very."	<u>ra</u> 'in'
f	Voiceless labio-dental fricative; like sound of <u>f</u> in "fire."	<u>fo</u> 'greeting'
s	Alveolar grooved voiceless fricative; like sound of <u>s</u> in "see."	<u>safun</u> 'soap'
z	Alveolar grooved voiced fricative; like sound of <u>z</u> in "zebra."	<u>zen</u> 'old'
h	Glottal fricative; like sound of <u>h</u> in "has."	<u>ha</u> 'to drink'

#### Glides

w	Labio-velar; like sound of <u>w</u> in "wash."	<u>woy</u> 'ten'
y	Palatal; like sound of <u>y</u> in "yes."	<u>ye</u> 'to return'

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page		Page
PREFACE	ii	Phonology Drills	13
INTRODUCTION	iii	Structural Drills	16
UNIT 1	1	UNIT 3	21
Dialogue 1	1	Dialogue 1	21
Dialogue 2	1	Dialogue 2	21
Dialogue 3	1	Dialogue 3	21
Dialogue 4	1	Dialogue 4	22
Dialogue 5	2	Notes on the Dialogues	22
Dialogue 6	2	Phonology Drills	22
Dialogue 7	2	Structural Drills	24
Dialogue 8	2	UNIT 4	30
Dialogue 9	2	Dialogue 1	30
Dialogue 10	3	Dialogue 2	30
Dialogue 11	3	Notes on the Dialogues	31
Dialogue 12	3	Phonology Drills	31
Dialogue 13	3	Structural Drills	33
Dialogue 14	4	UNIT 5	40
Dialogue 15	4	Dialogue 1	40
Dialogue 16	5	Dialogue 2	40
Notes on the Dialogues	5	Dialogue 3	40
Phonology Drills	6	Dialogue 4	41
Structural Drills	7	Notes on the Dialogues	41
UNIT 2	11	Structural Drills	41
Dialogue 1	11	Phonology Drills	47
Dialogue 2	11	UNIT 6	48
Dialogue 3	11	Dialogue 1	48
Dialogue 4	12	Dialogue 2	48
Dialogue 5	12	Dialogue 3	49
Dialogue 6	12	Dialogue 4	49
Notes on the Dialogues	13	Note on the Dialogues	49

	Page		Page
Structural Drills	50	Dialogue 2	80
Phonology Drills	55	Dialogue 3	81
UNIT 7	56	Dialogue 4	81
Dialogue 1	56	Note on the Dialogues	81
Dialogue 2	56	Structural Drills	81
Dialogue 3	56	Phonology Drills	86
Dialogue 4	56	UNIT 11	87
Dialogue 5	56	Dialogue 1	87
Dialogue 6	57	Dialogue 2	87
Dialogue 7	57	Dialogue 3	88
Dialogue 8	57	Dialogue 4	88
Notes on the Dialogues	58	Dialogue 5	88
Structural Drills	58	Dialogue 6	89
Phonology Drills	64	Dialogue 7	89
UNIT 8	65	Dialogue 8	89
Dialogue 1	65	Dialogue 9	89
Dialogue 2	65	Notes on the Dialogues	90
Dialogue 3	65	Structural Drills	90
Dialogue 4	66	Phonology Drills	96
Structural Drills	66	UNIT 12	97
Phonology Drills	71	Dialogue 1	97
UNIT 9	72	Dialogue 2	97
Dialogue 1	72	Dialogue 3	97
Dialogue 2	72	Dialogue 4	98
Dialogue 3	72	Structural Drills	98
Dialogue 4	73	Phonology Drills	104
Dialogue 5	73	Note on the Phonology	
Dialogue 6	73	Drills	106
Note on the Dialogues	74	UNIT 13	107
Structural Drills	74	Dialogue 1	107
Phonology Drills	79	Dialogue 2	107
UNIT 10	80	Dialogue 3	108
Dialogue 1	80	Dialogue 4	108

	Page		Page
Dialogue 5	109	Phonology Drills	151
Dialogue 6	109	UNIT 18	153
Notes on the Dialogues	109	Dialogue 1	153
Structural Drills	109	Dialogue 2	154
Phonology Drills	111	Dialogue 3	154
UNIT 14	117	Dialogue 4	154
Dialogue 1	117	Structural Drills	154
Dialogue 2	117	Phonology Drills	158
Dialogue 3	118	UNIT 19	160
Dialogue 4	118	Dialogue 1	160
Dialogue 5	119	Dialogue 2	160
Dialogue 6	119	Dialogue 3	161
Dialogue 7	119	Dialogue 4	161
Note on the Dialogues	119	Notes on the Dialogues	161
Structural Drills	120	Structural Drills	161
Note on the Structural		Phonology Drills	169
Drills	123	UNIT 20	171
Phonology Drills	123	Dialogue 1	171
UNIT 15	125	Dialogue 2	171
Structural Drills	125	Dialogue 3	171
Note on the Structural		Dialogue 4	171
Drills	134	Dialogue 5	172
Phonology Drills	134	Dialogue 6	172
UNIT 16	136	Dialogue 7	172
Dialogue 1	136	Dialogue 8	172
Dialogue 2	136	Dialogue 9	173
Dialogue 3	137	Dialogue 10	173
Dialogue 4	137	Dialogue 11	173
Dialogue 5	137	Dialogue 12	173
Notes on the Dialogues	138	Structural Drills	174
Structural Drills	138	Phonology Drills	179
Phonology Drills	142	UNIT 21	181
UNIT 17	144	Dialogue 1	181
Structural Drills	144	Dialogue 2	181

	Page		Page
Dialogue 3	182	Dialogue 3	217
Dialogue 4	182	Dialogue 4	217
Structural Drills	183	Notes on the Dialogues	218
UNIT 22	187	Structural Drills	218
Dialogue 1	187	UNIT 27	223
Dialogue 2	187	Dialogue 1	223
Dialogue 3	188	Dialogue 2	223
Dialogue 4	188	Dialogue 3	224
Dialogue 5	188	Dialogue 4	224
Dialogue 6	188	Dialogue 5	224
Note on the Dialogues	189	Note on the Dialogues	225
Structural Drills	189	Structural Drills	225
UNIT 23	194	UNIT 28	231
Dialogue 1	194	Dialogue 1	231
Dialogue 2	194	Dialogue 2	231
Dialogue 3	195	Structural Drills	232
Dialogue 4	196	UNIT 29	238
Notes on the Dialogues	196	Dialogue 1	238
Structural Drills	199	Dialogue 2	238
UNIT 24	203	Dialogue 3	239
Structural Drills	203	Dialogue 4	239
UNIT 25	208	Dialogue 5	239
Dialogue 1	208	Dialogue 6	239
Dialogue 2	208	Note on the Dialogues	240
Dialogue 3	208	Structural Drills	240
Dialogue 4	208	UNIT 30	249
Dialogue 5	209	Dialogue 1	249
Dialogue 6	209	Dialogue 2	250
Dialogue 7	210	Note on the Dialogues	250
Structural Drills	210	Structural Drills	250
UNIT 26	216	DJERMA-ENGLISH-FRENCH GLOSSARY	260
Dialogue 1	216	ENGLISH-DJERMA-FRENCH GLOSSARY	273
Dialogue 2	216	FRENCH-DJERMA-ENGLISH GLOSSARY	

UNIT 1  
Dialogue 1

fofo  
A: Fofof.

hello  
A: Hello.

ngwoya  
B: Ngwoya.

hello  
B: Hello.

Dialogue 2

ni  
kani  
bani  
A: Ni kani<sup>1</sup> bani?<sup>2</sup>

you (sg. subject)  
to lie down  
health

A: How are you?

samey  
B: Bani samey.

good  
B: Very well.

Dialogue 3

A: Ni kani bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Ni kani bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 4

aran  
A: Aran kani bani?

you (pl. subject)

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey.

B: Very well.

Dialogue 5

A: Aran kani bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Ni kani bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 6

A: Aran kani bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Aran kani bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 7

A: Ni foy<sup>1</sup> bani?<sup>3</sup>

A: How are you?  
to spend the day

B: Bani samey.

B: Very well.

Dialogue 8

A: Ni foy bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Ni foy bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 9

A: Aran foy bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey.

B: Very well.

Dialogue 10

A: Aran foy bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Ni foy bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 11

A: Aran foy bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Aran foy bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 12

A: Fofu.

A: Hello.

B: Ngwoya.

B: Hello.

A: Ni foy bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Ni foy bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 13

A: Fofu.

A: Hello.

B: Ngwoya.

B: Hello.

A: Aran foy bani?

A: How are you?

B: Bani samey. Aran foy bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey.

A: Very well.

Dialogue 14

A: Fofó

A: Hello

B: Ngwoya.

B: Hello.

mate

how, what

go

to be (Present)

Mate ni go?

How are you?

ay

I

A: Ay go bani samey. Mate aran go?

A: I'm very well. How are you?

iri

we

B: Iri go bani samey.

B: We're very well.

Dialogue 15

man

where

koy

to go

A: Man ni koy?

A: Where did you go?

habo

the market

do

to, to the place of

B: Ay koy habo do.

B: I went to the market.

Fatu<sup>5</sup>

Fatu

A: Mate Fatu go?

A: How is Fatu?

a

he/she/it

B: A go bani samey.

B: She's very well.

A: Man a koy?

kwara

B: A koy kwara do.

A: Where did she go?

the village

B: She went to the village.

### Dialogue 16

A: Man aran koy?

faro

B: Iri koy faro do.

A: Where did you go?

the field

B: We went to the field.

Bakari

nda

Yakuba

A: Mate Bakari nda Yakuba go?

Bakari

and

Yakuba

A: How are Bakari and Yakuba?

i

B: I go bani samey.

they

B: They're very well.

A: Man i koy?

A: Where did they go?

fuwo

B: I koy fuwo do.

the house

B: They went to the house.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. This tense, the Past, comparable to the Simple Past in English, denotes completed action at an unspecified time in the past. It is identical in form with the Infinitive.
2. A morning greeting.
3. An afternoon greeting.
4. Indicates movement toward a place or reinforces location.
5. A female name.
6. A male name.

Phonology Drills

A. fo.  
Fofo.

B. ya.  
Ngwoya.

C. ni?  
bani?  
ni  
kani  
kani bani?  
ni  
Ni kani bani?

D. mey.  
samey.

E. ran  
aran  
kani bani?  
Aran kani bani?

F. foy  
bani?  
foy bani?  
ni  
Ni foy bani?

G. aran  
foy bani?  
Aran foy bani?

H. go?  
ni  
ni go?  
te  
mate  
Mate ni go?

I. go  
ay  
ay go  
bani samey?  
Ay go bani samey?

J. go?  
aran  
aran go?  
mate  
Mate aran go?

K. go  
iri  
iri go  
bani samey.  
Iri go bani samey.

L. koy?  
ni  
ni koy?  
man  
Man ni koy?

M. do.  
bo  
habo  
habo do.  
koy  
ay  
ay koy.  
Ay koy habo do.

N. go?  
tu  
Fatu  
Fatu go?  
mate  
Mate Fatu go?

O. go  
a  
a go  
bani samey.  
A go bani samey.

P. koy?  
a  
a koy?  
man  
Man a koy?

Q. ra.  
kwara.  
koy  
a koy  
A koy kwara.

R. koy?  
aran  
aran koy?  
man  
Man aran koy?

S. do.  
ro  
faro  
faro do.  
koy  
iri  
iri koy  
Iri koy faro do.

T. go?  
ba  
kuba  
Yakuba  
Yakuba go?  
nda  
nda Yakuba go?  
ri

kari  
Bakari  
Bakari nda Yakuba  
Bakari nda Yakuba go?  
mate  
Mate Bakari nda Yakuba go?

U. go  
i  
i go  
bani samey.  
I go bani samey.

V. koy?  
i  
i koy?  
man  
Man i koy?

W. do.  
wo  
fuwo  
fuwo do.  
koy  
i  
i koy  
I koy fuwo do.

Structural Drills.

ay	'I'	iri	'we'
ni	'you (sg.)'	aran	'you (pl.)'
a	'he/she/it'	i	'they'

- A. 1. Mate ni go?  
2. Mate aran go?  
3. Mate a go?  
4. Mate i go?

- B. 1. Mate Fatu go?  
2. Mate Bakari go?  
3. Mate Yakuba go?

- C. 1. Mate Bakari nda Yakuba go?  
2. Mate Yakuba nda Fatu go?  
3. Mate Fatu nda Bakari go?

- D. 1. Ay go bani samey.  
2. Iri go bani samey.  
3. A go bani samey.  
4. I go bani samey.

- E. 1. Man ni koy?  
2. Man aran koy?  
3. Man a koy?  
4. Man i koy?

- F. 1. Ay koy habo do.  
2. Ay koy kwara do.  
3. Ay koy faro do.  
4. Ay koy fuwo do.

- G. 1. Ni koy habo do.  
2. Ni koy kwara do.  
3. Ni koy faro do.  
4. Ni koy fuwo do.

- A. 1. How are you?  
2. How are you?  
3. How is he/she?  
4. How are they?

- B. 1. How is Fatu?  
2. How is Bakari?  
3. How is Yakuba?

- C. 1. How are Bakari and Yakuba?  
2. How are Yakuba and Fatu?  
3. How are Fatu and Bakari?

- D. 1. I'm very well.  
2. We're very well.  
3. He's/She's very well.  
4. They're very well.

- E. 1. Where did you go?  
2. Where did you go?  
3. Where did he/she go?  
4. Where did they go?

- F. 1. I went to the market.  
2. I went to the village.  
3. I went to the field.  
4. I went to the house.

- G. 1. You went to the market.  
2. You went to the village.  
3. You went to the field.  
4. You went to the house.

- H. 1. A koy habo do.  
2. A koy kwara do.  
3. A koy faro do.  
4. A koy fuwo do.

- I. 1. Iri koy habo do.  
2. Iri koy kwara do.  
3. Iri koy faro do.  
4. Iri koy fuwo do.

- J. 1. Aran koy habo do.  
2. Aran koy kwara do.  
3. Aran koy faro do.  
4. Aran koy fuwo do.

- K. 1. I koy habo do.  
2. I koy kwara do.  
3. I koy faro do.  
4. I koy fuwo do.

- L. 1. Ay koy habo do.  
2. Ni koy habo do.  
3. A koy habo do.  
4. Iri koy habo do.  
5. Aran koy habo do.  
6. I koy habo do.

- M. 1. Ay koy kwara do.  
2. Ni koy kwara do.  
3. A koy kwara do.  
4. Iri koy kwara do.  
5. Aran koy kwara do.  
6. I koy kwara do.

- H. 1. He/She went to the market.  
2. He/She went to the village.  
3. He/She went to the field.  
4. He/She went to the house.

- I. 1. We went to the market.  
2. We went to the village.  
3. We went to the field.  
4. We went to the house.

- J. 1. You went to the market.  
2. You went to the village.  
3. You went to the field.  
4. You went to the house.

- K. 1. They went to the market.  
2. They went to the village.  
3. They went to the field.  
4. They went to the house.

- L. 1. I went to the market.  
2. You went to the market.  
3. He/She went to the market.  
4. We went to the market.  
5. You went to the market.  
6. They went to the market.

- M. 1. I went to the village.  
2. You went to the village.  
3. He/She went to the village.  
4. We went to the village.  
5. You went to the village.  
6. They went to the village.

- N. 1. Ay koy faro do.
2. Ni koy faro do.
3. A koy faro do.
4. Iri koy faro do.
5. Aran koy faro do.
6. I koy faro do.

- O. 1. Ay koy fuwo do.
2. Ni koy fuwo do.
3. A koy fuwo do.
4. Iri koy fuwo do.
5. Aran koy fuwo do.
6. I koy fuwo do.

- N. 1. I went to the field.
2. You went to the field.
3. He/She went to the field.
4. We went to the field.
5. You went to the field.
6. They went to the field.

- O. 1. I went to the house.
2. You went to the house.
3. He/She went to the house.
4. We went to the house.
5. You went to the house.
6. They went to the house.

UNIT 2

Dialogue 1

wati fo  
no<sup>1</sup>

A: Wati fo no ni ka?

ka

bi

B: Bi no ay ka.

Abdu<sup>2</sup>  
wala<sup>3</sup>

A: Abdu ka wala?

cho

B: Cho, a ka.

A: Wati fo no aran ka?

B: Bi no iri ka.

Maman<sup>2</sup>  
Amina<sup>4</sup>

A: Maman nda Amina ka wala?

B: Cho, i-ka.

A: Bi ni koy habo do?

ha'a  
mana

B: Ha'a, bi ay mana<sup>1</sup> koy.

when

it is/it was/ it will be/they  
are/they were/they will be  
to come

A: When did you come?

yesterday

B: I came yesterday.

Abdu

(signals a question)

A: Did Abdu come?

yes

B: Yes, he came.

Dialogue 2

A: When did you come?

B: We came yesterday.

Maman  
Amina

A: Did Maman and Amina come?

B: Yes, they came.

Dialogue 3

A: Did you go to the market yesterday?

no

(signals the negative in the  
Past)

B: No, I didn't go yesterday.

A: Bakari koy wala?

B: Ha'a, a mana koy.

A: Did Bakari go?

B: No, he didn't go.

#### Dialogue 4

A: Bi aran koy habo do?

B: Ha'a, bi iri mana koy.

A: Did you go to the market yesterday?

B: No, we didn't go yesterday.

A: Fatu nda Yakuba koy wala?

B: Ha'a, i mana koy.

A: Did Fatu and Yakuba go?

B: No, they didn't go.

#### Dialogue 5

A: Bi no Abdu ka wala?

B: Oho, bi no a ka.

A: Did Abdu come yesterday?

B: Yes, he came yesterday.

A: Bi no Maman ka wala?

B: Ha'a, bi a mana ka.

A: Did Maman come yesterday?

B: No, he didn't come yesterday.

A: Bakari nda Fatu ka wala?

B: Ha'a, i mana ka.

A: Did Bakari and Fatu come?

B: No, they didn't come.

#### Dialogue 6

kala

nda

to'ton

A: Kala nda to'ton.

B: Kala nda to'ton.

until

with

to increase

A: See you later.

B: See you later.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. In an affirmative expression, no precedes the subject pronoun; in a negative expression, mana follows the subject pronoun.
2. A male name.
3. The use of wala is optional.
4. A female name.

Phonology Drills

A.	ka?	B.	ka.	C.	la?	D.	ka?
	ni		ay		wala?		a ka.
	ni ka?		ay ka.		ka wala?		ho
	no		no		du		oho
	no ni ka?		no ay ka.		Abdu		Oho, a ka.
	fo		bi		Abdu ka wala?		
	ti		Bi no ay ka.				
	wati						
	wati fo						
	Wati fo no ni ka?						

E.	ka?	F.	ka.	G.	na
	ran		ri		mina
	aran		iri		Amina
	aran ka?		iri ka.		ka wala?
	no		no		Amina ka wala?
	no aran ka?		no iri ka.		nda
	wati fo		bi		nda Amina ka wala?
	Wati fo no aran ka?		Bi no iri ka.		man
					Maman
					Maman nda Amina
					Maman nda Amina ka wala?

H.	ka.	I.	do?	J.	koy.
	i ka.		bo		mana
ho			habo		mana koy.
oho			habo do?		ay
Oho, i ka.			koy		ay mana koy.
			koy habo do?		bi
			ni		bi ay mana koy.
			ni koy habo do?		ha'a
			bi.		Ha'a, bi ay mana koy.
			Bi ni koy habo do?		

K.	wala?	L.	a	M.	do?
	koy		mana koy.		habo
	koy wala?		a mana koy.		habo do?
	ri		ha'a		koy
	kari		Ha'a, a mana koy.		koy habo do?
	Bakari				aran
	Bakari koy wala?				aran koy habo do?
					bi
					Bi aran koy habo do?

N.	koy.	O.	ba
	mana		kuba
	mana koy.		Yakuba
	iri		koy wala?
	iri mana koy.		Yakuba koy wala?
	bi		nda
	bi iri mana koy.		nda Yakuba koy wala?
	ha'a		tu
	Ha'a, bi iri mana koy.		Fatu
			Fatu nda Yakuba
			Fatu nda Yakuba koy wala?



P. i  
mana koy.  
i mana koy.  
ha'a  
Ha'a, i mana koy.

R. ka.  
a  
a ka.  
no  
no a ka.  
bi  
bi no a ka.  
oho  
Oho, bi no a ka.

T. ka.  
mana  
mana ka.  
a  
a mana ka.  
bi  
bi a mana ka.  
ha'a  
Ha'a, bi a mana ka.

V. ka.  
mana  
mana ka.  
i  
i mana ka.  
ha'a  
Ha'a, i mana ka.

Q. wala?  
ka  
ka wala?  
Abdu  
Abdu ka wala?  
no  
no Abdu ka wala?  
bi  
Bi no Abdu ka wala?

S. wala?  
ka  
ka wala?  
Maman  
Maman ka wala?  
no  
no Maman ka wala?  
bi  
Bi no Maman ka wala?

U. wala?  
ka  
ka wala?  
Fatu ka wala?  
nda  
nda Fatu ka wala?  
Bakari  
Bakari nda Fatu ka wala?

## Structural Drills

A. 1. Wati fo no ni ka?

2. Wati fo no aran ka?

3. Wati fo no a ka?

4. Wati fo no i ka?

B. 1. Wati fo no ni koy?

2. Wati fo no aran koy?

3. Wati fo no a koy?

4. Wati fo no i koy?

C. 1. Wati fo no Abdu ka?

2. Wati fo no Maman ka?

3. Wati fo no Amina ka?

4. Wati fo no Bakari ka?

5. Wati fo no Fatu ka?

6. Wati fo no Yakuba ka?

D. 1. Wati fo no Abdu koy?

2. Wati fo no Maman koy?

3. Wati fo no Amina koy?

4. Wati fo no Bakari koy?

5. Wati fo no Fatu koy?

6. Wati fo no Yakuba koy?

E. 1. Bi no ay ka.

2. Bi no iri ka.

3. Bi no a ka.

4. Bi no i ka.

F. 1. Bi no ay koy.

2. Bi no iri koy.

3. Bi no a koy.

4. Bi no i koy.

A. 1. When did you come?

2. When did you come?

3. When did he/she come?

4. When did they come?

B. 1. When did you go?

2. When did you go?

3. When did he/she go?

4. When did they go?

C. 1. When did Abdu come?

2. When did Maman come?

3. When did Amina come?

4. When did Bakari come?

5. When did Fatu come?

6. When did Yakuba come?

D. 1. When did Abdu go?

2. When did Maman go?

3. When did Amina go?

4. When did Bakari go?

5. When did Fatu go?

6. When did Yakuba go?

E. 1. I came yesterday.

2. We came yesterday.

3. He/She came yesterday.

4. They came yesterday.

F. 1. I went yesterday.

2. We went yesterday.

3. He/She went yesterday.

4. They went yesterday.

- G. 1. Bi no Abdu ka.  
 2. Bi no Maman ka.  
 3. Bi no Amina ka.  
 4. Bi no Bakari ka.  
 5. Bi no Fatu ka.  
 6. Bi no Yakuba ka.

- H. 1. Bi no Abdu koy.  
 2. Bi no Maman koy.  
 3. Bi no Amina koy.  
 4. Bi no Bakari koy.  
 5. Bi no Fatu koy.  
 6. Bi no Yakuba koy.

- I. 1. Bi ay mana ka.  
 2. Bi iri mana ka.  
 3. Bi a mana ka.  
 4. Bi i mana ka.

- J. 1. Bi ay mana koy.  
 2. Bi iri mana koy.  
 3. Bi a mana koy.  
 4. Bi i mana koy.

- K. 1. Bi Abdu mana ka.  
 2. Bi Maman mana ka.  
 3. Bi Amina mana ka.  
 4. Bi Bakari mana ka.  
 5. Bi Fatu mana ka.  
 6. Bi Yakuba mana ka.

- L. 1. Bi Abdu mana koy.  
 2. Bi Maman mana koy.  
 3. Bi Amina mana koy.  
 4. Bi Bakari mana koy.  
 5. Bi Fatu mana koy.  
 6. Bi Yakuba mana koy.

- G. 1. Abdu came yesterday.  
 2. Maman came yesterday.  
 3. Amina came yesterday.  
 4. Bakari came yesterday.  
 5. Fatu came yesterday.  
 6. Yakuba came yesterday.

- H. 1. Abdu went yesterday.  
 2. Maman went yesterday.  
 3. Amina went yesterday.  
 4. Bakari went yesterday.  
 5. Fatu went yesterday.  
 6. Yakuba went yesterday.

- I. 1. I didn't come yesterday.  
 2. We didn't come yesterday.  
 3. He/She didn't come yesterday.  
 4. They didn't come yesterday.

- J. 1. I didn't go yesterday.  
 2. We didn't go yesterday.  
 3. He/She didn't go yesterday.  
 4. They didn't go yesterday.

- K. 1. Abdu didn't come yesterday.  
 2. Maman didn't come yesterday.  
 3. Amina didn't come yesterday.  
 4. Bakari didn't come yesterday.  
 5. Fatu didn't come yesterday.  
 6. Yakuba didn't come yesterday.

- L. 1. Abdu didn't go yesterday.  
 2. Maman didn't go yesterday.  
 3. Amina didn't go yesterday.  
 4. Bakari didn't go yesterday.  
 5. Fatu didn't go yesterday.  
 6. Yakuba didn't go yesterday.

- M. 1. Abdu ka wala?  
 2. Maman ka wala?  
 3. Amina ka wala?  
 4. Bakari ka wala?  
 5. Fatu ka wala?  
 6. Yakuba ka wala?

- M. 1. Did Abdu come?  
 2. Did Maman come?  
 3. Did Amina come?  
 4. Did Bakari come?  
 5. Did Fatu come?  
 6. Did Yakuba come?

- N. 1. Abdu koy wala?  
 2. Maman koy wala?  
 3. Amina koy wala?  
 4. Bakari koy wala?  
 5. Fatu koy wala?  
 6. Yakuba koy wala?

- N. 1. Did Abdu go?  
 2. Did Maman go?  
 3. Did Amina go?  
 4. Did Bakari go?  
 5. Did Fatu go?  
 6. Did Yakuba go?

- O. 1. Abdu nda Maman ka wala?  
 2. Maman nda Amina ka wala?  
 3. Amina nda Bakari ka wala?  
 4. Bakari nda Fatu ka wala?  
 5. Fatu nda Yakuba ka wala?  
 6. Yakuba nda Abdu ka wala?

- O. 1. Did Abdu and Maman come?  
 2. Did Maman and Amina come?  
 3. Did Amina and Bakari come?  
 4. Did Bakari and Fatu come?  
 5. Did Fatu and Yakuba come?  
 6. Did Yakuba and Abdu come?

- P. 1. Abdu nda Maman koy wala?  
 2. Maman nda Amina koy wala?  
 3. Amina nda Bakari koy wala?  
 4. Bakari nda Fatu koy wala?  
 5. Fatu nda Yakuba koy wala?  
 6. Yakuba nda Abdu koy wala?

- P. 1. Did Abdu and Maman go?  
 2. Did Maman and Amina go?  
 3. Did Amina and Bakari go?  
 4. Did Bakari and Fatu go?  
 5. Did Fatu and Yakuba go?  
 6. Did Yakuba and Abdu go?

- Q. 1. Oho, bi no ay ka.  
 2. Oho, bi no iri ka.  
 3. Oho, bi no a ka.  
 4. Oho, bi no i ka.

- Q. 1. Yes, I came yesterday.  
 2. Yes, we came yesterday.  
 3. Yes, he/she came yesterday.  
 4. Yes, they came yesterday.

- R. 1. Oho, bi no ay koy.  
 2. Oho, bi no iri koy.  
 3. Oho, bi no a koy.  
 4. Oho, bi no i koy.

- S. 1. Ha'a, bi ay mana ka.  
 2. Ha'a, bi iri mana ka.  
 3. Ha'a, bi a mana ka.  
 4. Ha'a, bi i mana ka.

- T. 1. Ha'a, bi ay mana koy.  
 2. Ha'a, bi iri mana koy.  
 3. Ha'a, bi a mana koy.  
 4. Ha'a, bi i mana koy.

- U. 1. Oho, bi no Abdu ka.  
 2. Oho, bi no Maman ka.  
 3. Oho, bi no Amina ka.  
 4. Oho, bi no Bakari ka.  
 5. Oho, bi no Fatu ka.  
 6. Oho, bi no Yakuba ka.

- V. 1. Oho, bi no Abdu koy.  
 2. Oho, bi no Maman koy.  
 3. Oho, bi no Amina koy.  
 4. Oho, bi no Bakari koy.  
 5. Oho, bi no Fatu koy.  
 6. Oho, bi no Yakuba koy.

- W. 1. Ha'a, bi Abdu mana ka.  
 2. Ha'a, bi Maman mana ka.  
 3. Ha'a, bi Amina mana ka.  
 4. Ha'a, bi Bakari mana ka.  
 5. Ha'a, bi Fatu mana ka.  
 6. Ha'a, bi Yakuba mana ka.

- R. 1. Yes, I went yesterday.  
 2. Yes, we went yesterday.  
 3. Yes, he/she went yesterday.  
 4. Yes, they went yesterday.

- S. 1. No, I didn't come yesterday.  
 2. No, we didn't come yesterday.  
 3. No, he/she didn't come yesterday.  
 4. No, they didn't come yesterday.

- T. 1. No, I didn't go yesterday.  
 2. No, we didn't go yesterday.  
 3. No, he/she didn't go yesterday.  
 4. No, they didn't go yesterday.

- U. 1. Yes, Abdu came yesterday.  
 2. Yes, Maman came yesterday.  
 3. Yes, Amina came yesterday.  
 4. Yes, Bakari came yesterday.  
 5. Yes, Fatu came yesterday.  
 6. Yes, Yakuba came yesterday.

- V. 1. Yes, Abdu went yesterday.  
 2. Yes, Maman went yesterday.  
 3. Yes, Amina went yesterday.  
 4. Yes, Bakari went yesterday.  
 5. Yes, Fatu went yesterday.  
 6. Yes, Yakuba went yesterday.

- W. 1. No, Abdu didn't come yesterday.  
 2. No, Maman didn't come yesterday.  
 3. No, Amina didn't come yesterday.  
 4. No, Bakari didn't come yesterday.  
 5. No, Fatu didn't come yesterday.  
 6. No, Yakuba didn't come yesterday.

- X. 1. Ha'a, bi Abdu mana koy.  
 2. Ha'a, bi Maman mana koy.  
 3. Ha'a, bi Amina mana koy.  
 4. Ha'a, bi Bakari mana koy.  
 5. Ha'a, bi Fatu mana koy.  
 6. Ha'a, bi Yakuba mana koy.

- X. 1. No, Abdu didn't go yesterday.  
 2. No, Maman didn't go yesterday.  
 3. No, Amina didn't go yesterday.  
 4. No, Bakari didn't go yesterday.  
 5. No, Fatu didn't go yesterday.  
 6. No, Yakuba didn't go yesterday.

- Y. 1. Bi ni koy habo do?  
 2. Bi aran koy habo do?  
 3. Bi a koy habo do?  
 4. Bi i koy habo do?

- Y. 1. Did you go to the market yesterday?  
 2. Did you go to the market yesterday?  
 3. Did he/she go to the market yesterday?  
 4. Did they go to the market yesterday?

- Z. 1. Bi ni ka habo do?  
 2. Bi aran ka habo do?  
 3. Bi a ka habo do?  
 4. Bi i ka habo do?

- Z. 1. Did you come to the market yesterday?  
 2. Did you come to the market yesterday?  
 3. Did he/she come to the market yesterday?  
 4. Did they come to the market yesterday?

- AA. 1. Bi no Abdu ka wala?  
 2. Bi no Maman ka wala?  
 3. Bi no Amina ka wala?  
 4. Bi no Bakari ka wala?  
 5. Bi no Fatu ka wala?  
 6. Bi no Yakuba ka wala?

- AA. 1. Did Abdu come yesterday?  
 2. Did Maman come yesterday?  
 3. Did Amina come yesterday?  
 4. Did Bakari come yesterday?  
 5. Did Fatu come yesterday?  
 6. Did Yakuba come yesterday?

- BB. 1. Bi no Abdu koy wala?  
 2. Bi no Maman koy wala?  
 3. Bi no Amina koy wala?  
 4. Bi no Bakari koy wala?  
 5. Bi no Fatu koy wala?  
 6. Bi no Yakuba koy wala?

- BB. 1. Did Abdu go yesterday?  
 2. Did Maman go yesterday?  
 3. Did Amina go yesterday?  
 4. Did Bakari go yesterday?  
 5. Did Fatu go yesterday?  
 6. Did Yakuba go yesterday?

UNIT 3

Dialogue 1

A: Man ni koy bi?<sup>1</sup>

A: Where did you go yesterday?

B: Ay koy habo do.

B: I went to the market.

habu<sup>2</sup>

market (indef.)

bero<sup>2</sup>

big (def. sg.)

A: Ni koy habu bero do?<sup>2</sup>

A: Did you go to the big market?

kayna<sup>2</sup>

small (def./indef. sg.)

B: Ha'a, ay koy habu kayna do.

B: No, I went to the small market.

Dialogue 2

A: Man aran koy bi?

A: Where did you go yesterday?

B: Iri koy habo do.

B: We went to the market.

A: Aran koy habu bero do?<sup>2</sup>

A: Did you go to the big market?

B: Ha'a, iri koy habu kayna do.

B: No, we went to the small market.

Dialogue 3

A: Man a koy?

A: Where did he go?

B: A koy fari do.

B: He went to the field.

fari<sup>2</sup>

field (indef.)

A: A koy fari bero do?

A: Did he go to the big field?

B: Ha'a, a koy fari kayna do.

B: No, he went to the small field.

### Dialogue 4

A: Man i koy?

A: Where did they go?

B: I koy faro do.

B: They went to the field.

A: I koy fari bero do?

A: Did they go to the big field?

B: Ha'a, i koy fari kayna do.

B: No, they went to the small field.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. Bi can occur at the beginning or the end of an expression.
2. Most Djerma nouns and adjectives have four forms: indefinite singular and plural and definite singular and plural. Habu 'market' and fari 'field' are indefinite singulars; habo 'market' and faro 'field' are definite singulars. Bero 'big' is a definite singular form. Certain nouns, like kwara 'village,' and certain adjectives, like kayna 'small,' have the same form in the definite and indefinite singular. When an adjective modifies a noun in a definite expression, the adjective takes the definite form and the noun the indefinite. Hereafter, the conventions "def." and "indef." will be used to indicate these structural variations.

### Phonology Drills

A. bi?

B. do.

C. do?

koy

bo

ro?

koy bi?

habo

bero

ni

habo do.

bero do?

ni koy bi?

koy

bu

man

koy habo do.

habu

Man ni koy bi?

ay

habu bero do?

Ay koy habo do.

koy

koy habu bero do?

ni

Ni koy habu bero do?

D. do.  
 na  
 kayna  
 kayna do.  
~~habu~~  
 habu kayna do.  
 koy  
 koy habu kayna do.  
 ay  
 ay koy habu kayna do.  
 ha'a  
 Ha'a, ay koy habu kayna do.

E. bi? do.  
 koy habo  
 koy bi? habo do.  
 ran koy  
 aran koy habo do.  
 aran koy bi? ri  
 man iri  
 Man aran koy bi? Iri koy habo do.

G. do?  
 bero  
 bero do?  
 habu  
 habu bero do?  
 koy  
 koy habu bero do?  
 aran  
 Aran koy habu bero do?

H. do.  
 kayna  
 kayna do.  
 habu  
 habu kayna do.  
 koy  
 koy habu kayna do.  
 iri  
 iri koy habu kayna do.  
 ha'a  
 Ha'a, iri koy habu kayna do.

I. koy?  
 a  
 a koy?  
 man  
 Man a koy?

J. do.  
 ro  
 faro  
 faro do.  
 koy  
 koy faro do.  
 a  
 A koy faro do.

K. do?  
 bero  
 bero do?  
 ri  
 fari  
 fari bero do?  
 koy  
 koy fari bero do?  
 a  
 A koy fari bero do?

L. do.  
 kayna  
 kayna do.  
 fari  
 fari kayna do.  
 koy  
 koy fari kayna do.  
 a  
 a koy fari kayna do.  
 ha'a  
 Ha'a, a koy fari kayna do.

M. koy?  
 i  
 i koy?  
 man  
 Man i koy?  
 N. do.  
 faro  
 faro do.  
 koy  
 koy faro do.  
 i  
 I koy faro do.

O. do?  
 bero  
 bero do?  
 fari  
 fari bero do?  
 koy  
 koy fari bero do?  
 i  
 I koy fari bero do?

P. do.  
 kayna  
 kayna do.  
 fari  
 fari kayna do.  
 koy  
 koy fari kayna do.  
 i  
 i koy fari kayna do.  
 ha'a  
 Ha'a, i koy fari kayna do.

Structural Drills

- A. 1. Man ni koy bi?  
 2. Man aran koy bi?  
 3. Man a koy bi?  
 4. Man i koy bi?

- A. 1. Where did you go yesterday?  
 2. Where did you go yesterday?  
 3. Where did he/she go yesterday?  
 4. Where did they go yesterday?

- B. 1. Man Fatu koy bi?  
 2. Man Bakari koy bi?  
 3. Man Yakubā koy bi?  
 4. Man Abdu koy bi?  
 5. Man Maman koy bi?  
 6. Man Amina koy bi?

- B. 1. Where did Fatu go yesterday?  
 2. Where did Bakari go yesterday?  
 3. Where did Yakuba go yesterday?  
 4. Where did Abdu go yesterday?  
 5. Where did Maman go yesterday?  
 6. Where did Amina go yesterday?

- C. 1. Man ni koy bi?  
Ay koy habo do.
2. Man ni koy bi?  
Ay koy faro do.
3. Man ni koy bi?  
Ay koy kwara do.

- D. 1. Man aran koy bi?  
Iri koy habo do.
2. Man aran koy bi?  
Iri koy faro do.
3. Man aran koy bi?  
Iri koy kwara do.

- E. 1. Man Fatu koy bi?  
A koy habo do.
2. Man Bakari koy bi?  
A koy faro do.
3. Man Yakuba koy bi?  
A koy kwara do.

- F. 1. Man Abdu nda Maman koy bi?  
I koy habo do.
2. Man Maman nda Amina koy bi?  
I koy faro do.
3. Man Amina nda Abdu koy bi?  
I koy kwara do.

- G. 1. Hi koy habu bero do?
2. Aran koy habu bero do?
3. A koy habu bero do?
4. I koy habu bero do?

- C. 1. Where did you go yesterday?  
I went to the market.
2. Where did you go yesterday?  
I went to the field.
3. Where did you go yesterday?  
I went to the village.

- D. 1. Where did you go yesterday?  
We went to the market.
2. Where did you go yesterday?  
We went to the field.
3. Where did you go yesterday?  
We went to the village.

- E. 1. Where did Fatu go yesterday?  
She went to the market.
2. Where did Bakari go yesterday?  
He went to the field.
3. Where did Yakuba go yesterday?  
He went to the village.

- F. 1. Where did Abdu and Maman go yesterday?  
They went to the market.
2. Where did Maman and Amina go yesterday?  
They went to the field.
3. Where did Amina and Abdu go yesterday?  
They went to the village.

- G. 1. Did you go to the big market?
2. Did you go to the big market?
3. Did he/she go to the big market?
4. Did they go to the big market?

- H. 1. Ni koy fari bero do?  
 2. Aran koy fari bero do?  
 3. A koy fari bero do?  
 4. I koy fari bero do?

- I. 1. Ni koy habu kayna do?  
 2. Aran koy habu kayna do?  
 3. A koy habu kayna do?  
 4. I koy habu kayna do?

- J. 1. Ni koy fari kayna do?  
 2. Aran koy fari kayna do?  
 3. A koy fari kayna do?  
 4. I koy fari kayna do?

- K. 1. Ay koy habu bero do.  
 2. Iri koy habu bero do.  
 3. A koy habu bero do.  
 4. I koy habu bero do.

- L. 1. Ay koy fari bero do.  
 2. Iri koy fari bero do.  
 3. A koy fari bero do.  
 4. I koy fari bero do.

- M. 1. Ay koy habu kayna do.  
 2. Iri koy habu kayna do.  
 3. A koy habu kayna do.  
 4. I koy habu kayna do.

- N. 1. Ay koy fari kayna do.  
 2. Iri koy fari kayna do.  
 3. A koy fari kayna do.  
 4. I koy fari kayna do.

- H. 1. Did you go to the big field?  
 2. Did you go to the big field?  
 3. Did he/she go to the big field?  
 4. Did they go to the big field?

- I. 1. Did you go to the small market?  
 2. Did you go to the small market?  
 3. Did he/she go to the small market?  
 4. Did they go to the small market?

- J. 1. Did you go to the small field?  
 2. Did you go to the small field?  
 3. Did he/she go to the small field?  
 4. Did they go to the small field?

- K. 1. I went to the big market.  
 2. We went to the big market.  
 3. He/She went to the big market.  
 4. They went to the big market.

- L. 1. I went to the big field.  
 2. We went to the big field.  
 3. He/She went to the big field.  
 4. They went to the big field.

- M. 1. I went to the small market.  
 2. We went to the small market.  
 3. He/She went to the small market.  
 4. They went to the small market.

- N. 1. I went to the small field.  
 2. We went to the small field.  
 3. He/She went to the small field.  
 4. They went to the small field.

- O. 1. Ni koy habu bero do?  
 2. Ni koy habu kayna do?  
 3. Ni koy fari bero do?  
 4. Ni koy fari kayna do?

- O. 1. Did you go to the big market?  
 2. Did you go to the small market?  
 3. Did you go to the big field?  
 4. Did you go to the small field?

- P. 1. Aran koy habu bero do?  
 2. Aran koy habu kayna do?  
 3. Aran koy fari bero do?  
 4. Aran koy fari kayna do?

- P. 1. Did you go to the big market?  
 2. Did you go to the small market?  
 3. Did you go to the big field?  
 4. Did you go to the small field?

- Q. 1. A koy habu bero do?  
 2. A koy habu kayna do?  
 3. A koy fari bero do?  
 4. A koy fari kayna do?

- Q. 1. Did he/she go to the big market?  
 2. Did he/she go to the small market?  
 3. Did he/she go to the big field?  
 4. Did he/she go to the small field?

- R. 1. I koy habu bero do?  
 2. I koy habu kayna do?  
 3. I koy fari bero do?  
 4. I koy fari kayna do?

- R. 1. Did they go to the big market?  
 2. Did they go to the small market?  
 3. Did they go to the big field?  
 4. Did they go to the small field?

- S. 1. Ay koy habu bero do.  
 2. Ay koy habu kayna do.  
 3. Ay koy fari bero do.  
 4. Ay koy fari kayna do.

- S. 1. I went to the big market.  
 2. I went to the small market.  
 3. I went to the big field.  
 4. I went to the small field.

- T. 1. Iri koy habu bero do.  
 2. Iri koy habu kayna do.  
 3. Iri koy fari bero do.  
 4. Iri koy fari kayna do.

- T. 1. We went to the big market.  
 2. We went to the small market.  
 3. We went to the big field.  
 4. We went to the small field.

- U. 1. A koy habu bero do.  
 2. A koy habu kayna do.  
 3. A koy fari bero do.  
 4. A koy fari kayna do.

- U. 1. He/She went to the big market.  
 2. He/She went to the small market.  
 3. He/She went to the big field.  
 4. He/She went to the small field.

- V. 1. I koy habu bero do.
2. I koy habu kayna do.
3. I koy fari bero do.
4. I koy fari kayna do.

- W. 1. Ni koy habu bero do?  
Ha'a, ay koy habu kayna do.
2. Ni koy habu kayna do?  
Ha'a, ay koy habu bero do.
3. Ni koy fari bero do?  
Ha'a, ay koy fari kayna do.
4. Ni koy fari kayna do?  
Ha'a, ay koy fari bero do.

- X. 1. Aran koy habu bero do?  
Ha'a, iri koy habu kayna do.
2. Aran koy habu kayna do?  
Ha'a, iri koy habu bero do.
3. Aran koy fari bero do?  
Ha'a, iri koy fari kayna do.
4. Aran koy fari kayna do?  
Ha'a, iri koy fari bero do.

- Y. 1. Fatu koy habu bero do?  
Ha'a, a koy habu kayna do.
2. Bakari koy habu kayna do?  
Ha'a, a koy habu bero do.
3. Yakuba koy fari bero do?  
Ha'a, a koy fari kayna do.
4. Abdu koy fari kayna do?  
Ha'a, a koy fari bero do.

- V. 1. They went to the big market.
2. They went to the small market.
3. They went to the big field.
4. They went to the small field.

- W. 1. Did you go to the big market?  
No, I went to the small market.
2. Did you go to the small market?  
No, I went to the big market.
3. Did you go to the big field?  
No, I went to the small field.
4. Did you go to the small field?  
No, I went to the big field.

- X. 1. Did you go to the big market?  
No, we went to the small market.
2. Did you go to the small market?  
No, we went to the big market.
3. Did you go to the big field?  
No, we went to the small field.
4. Did you go to the small field?  
No, we went to the big field.

- Y. 1. Did Fatu go to the big market?  
No, she went to the small market.
2. Did Bakari go to the small market?  
No, he went to the big market.
3. Did Yakuba go to the big field?  
No, he went to the small field.
4. Did Abdu go to the small field?  
No, he went to the big field.

Z. 1. Amina nda Fatu koy habu bero do?

Ha'a, i koy habu kayna do.

2. Abdu nda Maman koy habu kayna do?

Ha'a, i koy habu bero do.

3. Bakari nda Abdu koy fari bero do?

Ha'a, i koy fari kayna do.

4. Maman nda Yakuba koy fari kayna do?

Ha'a, i koy fari bero do.

Z. 1. Did Amina and Fatu go to the big market?

No, they went to the small market.

2. Did Abdu and Maman go to the small market?

No, they went to the big market.

3. Did Bakari and Abdu go to the big field?

No, they went to the small field.

4. Did Maman and Yakuba go to the small field?

No, they went to the big field.

UNIT 4

Dialogue 1

di  
ay  
ra  
A: Ni di ay faro ra?

to see  
me  
in  
A: Did you see me in the field?

ni  
B: Ha'a, ay mana di ni.

you (sg. object)  
B: No, I didn't see you.

A: Ni di Abdu?

A: Did you see Abdu?

a, ya  
B: Oho, ay di ya.<sup>1</sup>

him/her  
B: Yes, I saw him.

mo  
A: Ni di Bakari mo?<sup>2</sup>

too, also  
A: Did you see Bakari, too?

B: Oho. Ni mo<sup>2</sup> di ya?

B: Yes. Did you, too, see him?

A: Oho.

A: Yes.

Dialogue 2

iri  
A: Aran di iri habo ra?

us  
A: Did you see us in the market?

aran  
B: Ha'a, iri mana di aran.

you (pl. object)  
B: No, we didn't see you.

A: Aran di Fatu nda Amina?

A: Did you see Fatu and Amina?

ey, yey  
B: Oho, iri di yey.<sup>1</sup>

them  
B: Yes, we saw them.

A. Aran di Yakuba nda Maman mo?<sup>2</sup>

A: Did you see Yakuba and Maman, too?

B: Cho. Aran ne<sup>2</sup> di yey?

B: Yes. Did you, too, see them?

A: Cho.

A: Yes.

Notes on the Dialogues

1. A and ay become ya and yey following a word ending in -i.
2. Mo immediately follows the word it qualifies.

Phonology Drills

A. ra?  
faro  
faro ra?  
ay  
ay faro ra?  
di  
di ay faro ra?  
ni  
Ni di ay faro ra?

B. ni.  
di  
di ni.  
mana  
mana di ni.  
ay  
ay mana di ni.  
ha'a  
Ha'a, ay mana di ni.

C. Abdu?  
di  
di Abdu?  
ni  
Ni di Abdu?

D. ya.  
di  
di ya.  
ay  
ay di ya.  
cho  
Cho, ay di ya.

E. mo?  
Bakari  
Bakari mo?  
di  
di Bakari mo?  
ni  
Ni di Bakari mo?

F. ya?  
di  
di ya?  
mo  
mo di ya?  
ni  
Ni mo di ya?

G. ra?  
habo  
habo ra?  
iri  
iri habo ra?  
di  
di iri habo ra?  
aran  
Aran di iri habo ra?

H. aran.  
di  
di aran.  
mana  
mana di aran.  
iri  
iri mana di aran.  
ha'a  
Ha'a, iri mana di aran.

I. Amina?  
nda  
nda Amina?  
Fatu  
Fatu nda Amina?  
di  
di Fatu nda Amina?  
aran  
Aran di Fatu nda Amina?

J. yey.  
di  
di yey.  
iri  
iri di yey.  
oho  
Oho, iri di yey.

K. mo?  
Maman  
Maman mo?  
nda  
nda Maman mo?  
Yakuba  
Yakuba nda Maman mo?  
di  
di Yakuba nda Maman mo?  
aran  
Aran di Yakuba nda Maman mo?

L. yey?  
di  
di yey?  
mo  
mo di yey?  
aran  
Aran mo di yey?

## Structural Drills

<u>ay</u>	'me'	<u>iri</u>	'us'
<u>ni</u>	'you (sg.)'	<u>aran</u>	'you (pl.)'
<u>a, ya</u>	'him/her'	<u>ey, yey</u>	'them'

- A. 1. Ni di ay?  
2. Ni di iri?  
3. Ni di ya?  
4. Ni di yey?

- B. 1. Aran di ay?  
2. Aran di iri?  
3. Aran di ya?  
4. Aran di yey?

- C. 1. A di ay?  
2. A di ni?  
3. A di ya?  
4. A di iri?  
5. A di aran?  
6. A di yey?

- D. 1. I di ay?  
2. I di ni?  
3. I di ya?  
4. I di iri?  
5. I di aran?  
6. I di yey?

- E. 1. Oho, ay di ni.  
2. Oho, ay di ya.  
3. Oho, ay di aran.  
4. Oho, ay di yey.

- A. 1. Did you see me?  
2. Did you see us?  
3. Did you see him/her?  
4. Did you see them?

- B. 1. Did you see me?  
2. Did you see us?  
3. Did you see him/her?  
4. Did you see them?

- C. 1. Did he/she see me?  
2. Did he/she see you?  
3. Did he/she see him/her?  
4. Did he/she see us?  
5. Did he/she see you?  
6. Did he/she see them?

- D. 1. Did they see me?  
2. Did they see you?  
3. Did they see him/her?  
4. Did they see us?  
5. Did they see you?  
6. Did they see them?

- E. 1. Yes, I saw you.  
2. Yes, I saw him/her.  
3. Yes, I saw you.  
4. Yes, I saw them.

- F. 1. Oho, ni di ay.
2. Oho, ni di ya.
3. Oho, ni di iri.
4. Oho, ni di yey.

- G. 1. Oho, a di ay.
2. Oho, a di ni.
3. Oho, a di ya.
4. Oho, a di iri.
5. Oho, a di aran.
6. Oho, a di yey.

- H. 1. Oho, iri di ni.
2. Oho, iri di ya.
3. Oho, iri di aran.
4. Oho, iri di yey.

- I. 1. Oho, aran di ay.
2. Oho, aran di ya.
3. Oho, aran di iri.
4. Oho, aran di yey.

- J. 1. Oho, i di ay.
2. Oho, i di ni.
3. Oho, i di ya.
4. Oho, i di iri.
5. Oho, i di aran.
6. Oho, i di yey.

- K. 1. Ni di ay faro ra?
2. A di ay faro ra?
3. Aran di ay faro ra?
4. I di ay faro ra?

- F. 1. Yes, you saw me.
2. Yes, you saw him/her.
3. Yes, you saw us.
4. Yes, you saw them.

- G. 1. Yes, he/she saw me.
2. Yes, he/she saw you.
3. Yes, he/she saw him/her.
4. Yes, he/she saw us.
5. Yes, he/she saw you.
6. Yes, he/she saw them.

- H. 1. Yes, we saw you.
2. Yes, we saw him/her.
3. Yes, we saw you.
4. Yes, we saw them.

- I. 1. Yes, you saw me.
2. Yes, you saw him/her.
3. Yes, you saw us.
4. Yes, you saw them.

- J. 1. Yes, they saw me.
2. Yes, they saw you.
3. Yes, they saw him/her.
4. Yes, they saw us.
5. Yes, they saw you.
6. Yes, they saw them.

- K. 1. Did you see me in the field?
2. Did he/she see me in the field?
3. Did you see me in the field?
4. Did they see me in the field?

- L. 1. Ni di ya habo ra?
2. A di ya habo ra?
3. Aran di ya habo ra?
4. I di ya habo ra?

- M. 1. Ni di iri faro ra?
2. A di iri faro ra?
3. Aran di iri faro ra?
4. I di iri faro ra?

- N. 1. Ni di yey habo ra?
2. A di yey habo ra?
3. Aran di yey habo ra?
4. I di yey habo ra?

- O. 1. Ni di ay faro ra.
2. A di ay faro ra.
3. Aran di ay faro ra.
4. I di ay faro ra.

- P. 1. Ay di ni habo ra.
2. A di ni habo ra.
3. Iri di ni habo ra.
4. I di ni habo ra.

- Q. 1. Ay di ya faro ra.
2. Ni di ya faro ra.
3. A di ya faro ra.
4. Iri di ya faro ra.
5. Aran di ya faro ra.
6. I di ya faro ra.

- R. 1. Ni di iri habo ra.
2. A di iri habo ra.
3. Aran di iri habo ra.
4. I di iri habo ra.

- L. 1. Did you see him/her in the market?
2. Did he/she see him/her in the market?
3. Did you see him/her in the market?
4. Did they see him/her in the market?

- M. 1. Did you see us in the field?
2. Did he/she see us in the field?
3. Did you see us in the field?
4. Did they see us in the field?

- N. 1. Did you see them in the market?
2. Did he/she see them in the market?
3. Did you see them in the market?
4. Did they see them in the market?

- O. 1. You saw me in the field.
2. He/She saw me in the field.
3. You saw me in the field.
4. They saw me in the field.

- P. 1. I saw you in the market.
2. He/She saw you in the market.
3. We saw you in the market.
4. They saw you in the market.

- Q. 1. I saw him/her in the field.
2. You saw him/her in the field.
3. He/She saw him/her in the field.
4. We saw him/her in the field.
5. You saw him/her in the field.
6. They saw him/her in the field.

- R. 1. You saw us in the market.
2. He/She saw us in the market.
3. You saw us in the market.
4. They saw us in the market.

- S. 1. Ay di aran faro ra.  
2. A di aran faro ra.  
3. Iri di aran faro ra.  
4. I di aran faro ra.

- S. 1. I saw you in the field.  
2. He/She saw you in the field.  
3. We saw you in the field.  
4. They saw you in the field.

- T. 1. Ay di yey habo ra.  
2. Ni di yey habo ra.  
3. A di yey habo ra.  
4. Iri di yey habo ra.  
5. Aran di yey habo ra.  
6. I di yey habo ra.

- T. 1. I saw them in the market.  
2. You saw them in the market.  
3. He/She saw them in the market.  
4. We saw them in the market.  
5. You saw them in the market.  
6. They saw them in the market.

- U. 1. Ha'a, ay mana di ni.  
2. Ha'a, ay mana di ya.  
3. Ha'a, ay mana di aran.  
4. Ha'a, ay mana di yey.

- U. 1. No, I didn't see you.  
2. No, I didn't see him/her.  
3. No, I didn't see you.  
4. No, I didn't see them.

- V. 1. Ha'a, ni mana di ay.  
2. Ha'a, ni mana di ya.  
3. Ha'a, ni mana di iri.  
4. Ha'a, ni mana di yey.

- V. 1. No, you didn't see me.  
2. No, you didn't see him/her.  
3. No, you didn't see us.  
4. No, you didn't see them.

- W. 1. Ha'a, a mana di ay.  
2. Ha'a, a mana di ni.  
3. Ha'a, a mana di ya.  
4. Ha'a, a mana di iri.  
5. Ha'a, a mana di aran.  
6. Ha'a, a mana di yey.

- W. 1. No, he/she didn't see me.  
2. No, he/she didn't see you.  
3. No, he/she didn't see him/her.  
4. No, he/she didn't see us.  
5. No, he/she didn't see you.  
6. No, he/she didn't see them.

- X. 1. Ha'a, iri mana di ni.  
2. Ha'a, iri mana di ya.  
3. Ha'a, iri mana di aran.  
4. Ha'a, iri mana di yey.

- X. 1. No, we didn't see you.  
2. No, we didn't see him/her.  
3. No, we didn't see you.  
4. No, we didn't see them.

- Y. 1. Ha'a, aran mana di ay.  
 2. Ha'a, aran mana di ya.  
 3. Ha'a, aran mana di iri.  
 4. Ha'a, aran mana di yey.

- Y. 1. No, you didn't see me.  
 2. No, you didn't see him/her.  
 3. No, you didn't see us.  
 4. No, you didn't see them.

- Z. 1. Ha'a, i mana di ay.  
 2. Ha'a, i mana di ni.  
 3. Ha'a, i mana di ya.  
 4. Ha'a, i mana di iri.  
 5. Ha'a, i mana di aran.  
 6. Ha'a, i mana di yey.

- Z. 1. No, they didn't see me.  
 2. No, they didn't see you.  
 3. No, they didn't see him/her.  
 4. No, they didn't see us.  
 5. No, they didn't see you.  
 6. No, they didn't see them.

- AA. 1. Ni mana di ay faro ra.  
 2. A mana di ay faro ra.  
 3. Aran mana di ay faro ra.  
 4. I mana di ay faro ra.

- AA. 1. You didn't see me in the field.  
 2. He/She didn't see me in the field.  
 3. You didn't see me in the field.  
 4. They didn't see me in the field.

- BB. 1. Ay mana di ni habo ra.  
 2. A mana di ni habo ra.  
 3. Iri mana di ni habo ra.  
 4. I mana di ni habo ra.

- BB. 1. I didn't see you in the market.  
 2. He/She didn't see you in the market.  
 3. We didn't see you in the market.  
 4. They didn't see you in the market.

- CC. 1. Ay mana di ya faro ra.  
 2. Ni mana di ya faro ra.  
 3. A mana di ya faro ra.  
 4. Iri mana di ya faro ra.  
 5. Aran mana di ya faro ra.  
 6. I mana di ya faro ra.

- CC. 1. I didn't see him/her in the field.  
 2. You didn't see him/her in the field.  
 3. He/She didn't see him/her in the field.  
 4. We didn't see him/her in the field.  
 5. You didn't see him/her in the field.  
 6. They didn't see him/her in the field.

- DD. 1. Ni mana di iri habo ra.  
 2. A mana di iri habo ra.  
 3. Aran mana di iri habo ra.  
 4. I mana di iri habo ra.

- DD. 1. You didn't see us in the market.  
 2. He/She didn't see us in the market.  
 3. You didn't see us in the market.  
 4. They didn't see us in the market.

- EE. 1. Ay mana di aran faro ra.  
 2. A mana di aran faro ra.  
 3. Iri mana di aran faro ra.  
 4. I mana di aran faro ra.

- FF. 1. Ay mana di yey habo ra.  
 2. Ni mana di yey habo ra.  
 3. A mana di yey habo ra.  
 4. Iri mana di yey habo ra.  
 5. Aran mana di yey habo ra.  
 6. I mana di yey habo ra.

- GG. 1. Ni di Amina mo?  
 2. A di Amina mo?  
 3. Aran di Amina mo?  
 4. I di Amina mo?

- HH. 1. Fatu di ay mo?  
 2. Fatu di ni mo?  
 3. Fatu di ya mo?  
 4. Fatu di iri mo?  
 5. Fatu di aran mo?  
 6. Fatu di yey mo?

- II. 1. Abdu mo di ay?  
 2. Abdu mo di ni?  
 3. Abdu mo di ya?  
 4. Abdu mo di iri?  
 5. Abdu mo di aran?  
 6. Abdu mo di yey?

- JJ. 1. Ay di Fatu mo.  
 2. A di Fatu mo.  
 3. Iri di Fatu mo.  
 4. I di Fatu mo.

- EE. 1. I didn't see you in the field.  
 2. He/She didn't see you in the field.  
 3. We didn't see you in the field.  
 4. They didn't see you in the field.

- FF. 1. I didn't see them in the market.  
 2. You didn't see them in the market.  
 3. He/She didn't see them in the market.  
 4. We didn't see them in the market.  
 5. You didn't see them in the market.  
 6. They didn't see them in the market.

- GG. 1. Did you see Amina, too?  
 2. Did he/she see Amina, too?  
 3. Did you see Amina, too?  
 4. Did they see Amina, too?

- HH. 1. Did Fatu see me, too?  
 2. Did Fatu see you, too?  
 3. Did Fatu see him/her, too?  
 4. Did Fatu see us, too?  
 5. Did Fatu see you, too?  
 6. Did Fatu see them, too?

- II. 1. Did Abdu, too, see me?  
 2. Did Abdu, too, see you?  
 3. Did Abdu, too, see him/her?  
 4. Did Abdu, too, see us?  
 5. Did Abdu, too, see you?  
 6. Did Abdu, too, see them?

- JJ. 1. I saw Fatu, too.  
 2. He/She saw Fatu, too.  
 3. We saw Fatu, too.  
 4. They saw Fatu, too.

- KK. 1. Bakari di ay mo.  
2. Bakari di ni mo.  
3. Bakari di ya mo.  
4. Bakari di iri mo.  
5. Bakari di aran mo.  
6. Bakari di yey mo.

- KK. 1. Bakari saw me, too.  
2. Bakari saw you, too.  
3. Bakari saw him/her, too.  
4. Bakari saw us, too.  
5. Bakari saw you, too.  
6. Bakari saw them, too.

- LL. 1. Yakuba mo di ay.  
2. Yakuba mo di ni.  
3. Yakuba mo di ya.  
4. Yakuba mo di iri.  
5. Yakuba mo di aran.  
6. Yakuba mo di yey.

- LL. 1. Yakuba, too, saw me.  
2. Yakuba, too, saw you.  
3. Yakuba, too, saw him/her.  
4. Yakuba, too, saw us.  
5. Yakuba, too, saw you.  
6. Yakuba, too, saw them.

UNIT 5

Dialogue 1

ga  
suba  
A: Man ni ga koy<sup>1</sup> suba?

(signals the Future)  
tomorrow

A: Where are you going tomorrow?

Niamey<sup>2</sup>  
B: Ay ga koy Niamey.

Niamey  
B: I'm going to Niamey.

A: Abdu mo ga koy?

> A: Is Abdu, too, going?

si

(signals the negative in the  
Present and Future)

B: Ha'a, a si koy.

B: No, he's not going.

Dialogue 2

A: Man Amina nda Fatu ga koy  
suba?

A: Where are Amina and Fatu going to-  
morrow?

B: I ga koy Niamey habu berò do.

B: They're going to the big market of  
Niamey.

A: Aran mo ga koy?

A: Are you, too, going?

B: Ha'a, iri si koy.

B: No, we're not going.

Dialogue 3

Tilaberi<sup>3</sup>  
A: Maman ga ka Tilaberi suba?

Tilaberi

A: Is Maman coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

B: Oho, a ga ka.

B: Yes, he's coming.

A: Ni mo ga ka?

A: Are you, too, coming?

B: Ha'a, ay si ka.

B: No, I'm not coming.

#### Dialogue 4

A: Aran ga ka Tilaberi suba?

A: Are you coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

B: Oho, iri ga ka.

B: Yes, we're coming.

A: Yakuba nda Bakari mo ga ka?

A: Are Yakuba and Bakari, too, coming?

B: Ha'a, i si ka.

B: No, they're not coming.

#### Notes on the Dialogues

1. This tense, the Future, denotes intended action at an unspecified time in the future. Ga may also signal habitual action.
2. The capital city of Niger.
3. A town.

#### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Man ni ga koy suba?  
2. Man a ga koy suba?  
3. Man aran ga koy suba?  
4. Man i ga koy suba?

- A. 1. Where are you going tomorrow?  
2. Where is he/she going tomorrow?  
3. Where are you going tomorrow?  
4. Where are they going tomorrow?

- B. 1. Man Abdu ga koy suba?  
2. Man Amina ga koy suba?  
3. Man Fatu ga koy suba?  
4. Man Maman ga koy suba?  
5. Man Yakuba ga koy suba?  
6. Man Bakari ga koy suba?

- B. 1. Where is Abdu going tomorrow?  
2. Where is Amina going tomorrow?  
3. Where is Fatu going tomorrow?  
4. Where is Maman going tomorrow?  
5. Where is Yakuba going tomorrow?  
6. Where is Bakari going tomorrow?

- C. 1. Man Amina nda Fatu ga koy suba?  
 2. Man Fatu nda Maman ga koy suba?  
 3. Man Maman nda Yakuba ga koy suba?  
 4. Man Yakuba nda Bakari ga koy suba?

- C. 1. Where are Amina and Fatu going tomorrow?  
 2. Where are Fatu and Maman going tomorrow?  
 3. Where are Maman and Yakuba going tomorrow?  
 4. Where are Yakuba and Bakari going tomorrow?

- D. 1. Ay ga koy Niamey.  
 2. A ga koy Niamey.  
 3. Iri ga koy Niamey.  
 4. I ga koy Niamey.

- D. 1. I'm going to Niamey.  
 2. He's/She's going to Niamey.  
 3. We're going to Niamey.  
 4. They're going to Niamey.

- E. 1. Ay ga koy Tilaberi.  
 2. A ga koy Tilaberi.  
 3. Iri ga koy Tilaberi.  
 4. I ga koy Tilaberi.

- E. 1. I'm going to Tilaberi.  
 2. He's/She's going to Tilaberi.  
 3. We're going to Tilaberi.  
 4. They're going to Tilaberi.

- F. 1. Abdu ga koy Niamey.  
 2. Amina ga koy Niamey.  
 3. Fatu ga koy Niamey.  
 4. Maman ga koy Niamey.  
 5. Yakuba ga koy Niamey.  
 6. Bakari ga koy Niamey.

- F. 1. Abdu is going to Niamey.  
 2. Amina is going to Niamey.  
 3. Fatu is going to Niamey.  
 4. Maman is going to Niamey.  
 5. Yakuba is going to Niamey.  
 6. Bakari is going to Niamey.

- G. 1. Abdu ga koy Tilaberi.  
 2. Amina ga koy Tilaberi.  
 3. Fatu ga koy Tilaberi.  
 4. Maman ga koy Tilaberi.  
 5. Yakuba ga koy Tilaberi.  
 6. Bakari ga koy Tilaberi.

- G. 1. Abdu is going to Tilaberi.  
 2. Amina is going to Tilaberi.  
 3. Fatu is going to Tilaberi.  
 4. Maman is going to Tilaberi.  
 5. Yakuba is going to Tilaberi.  
 6. Bakari is going to Tilaberi.

- H. 1. Ay ga koy Niamey habu bero do.  
 2. A ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

- H. 1. I'm going to the big market of Niamey.  
 2. He's/She's going to the big market of Niamey.

3. Iri ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

4. I ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

I. 1. Ay ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

2. A ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

3. Iri ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

4. I ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

J. 1. Abdu ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

2. Amina ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

3. Fatu ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

4. Maman ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

5. Yakuba ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

6. Bakari ga koy Niamey habu bero do.

K. 1. Abdu ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

2. Amina ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

3. Fatu ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

4. Maman ga koy Tilaberi habu bero do.

3. We're going to the big market of Niamey.

4. They're going to the big market of Niamey.

I. 1. I'm going to the big market of Tilaberi.

2. He's/She's going to the big market of Tilaberi.

3. We're going to the big market of Tilaberi.

4. They're going to the big market of Tilaberi.

J. 1. Abdu is going to the big market of Niamey.

2. Amina is going to the big market of Niamey.

3. Fatu is going to the big market of Niamey.

4. Maman is going to the big market of Niamey.

5. Yakuba is going to the big market of Niamey.

6. Bakari is going to the big market of Niamey.

K. 1. Abdu is going to the big market of Tilaberi.

2. Amina is going to the big market of Tilaberi.

3. Fatu is going to the big market of Tilaberi.

4. Maman is going to the big market of Tilaberi.

5. Yakuba ga koy Tilaberi habu  
bero do.

6. Bakari ga koy Tilaberi habu  
bero do.

L. 1. Ni ga ka Tilaberi suba?

2. A ga ka Tilaberi suba?

3. Aran ga ka Tilaberi suba?

4. I ga ka Tilaberi suba?

M. 1. Ni ga ka Niamey suba?

2. A ga ka Niamey suba?

3. Aran ga ka Niamey suba?

4. I ga ka Niamey suba?

N. 1. Ni ga koy Tilaberi suba?

2. A ga koy Tilaberi suba?

3. Aran ga koy Tilaberi suba?

4. I ga koy Tilaberi suba?

O. 1. Ni ga koy Niamey suba?

2. A ga koy Niamey suba?

5. Yakuba is going to the big  
market of Tilaberi.

6. Bakari is going to the big  
market of Tilaberi.

L. 1. Are you coming to Tilaberi  
tomorrow?

2. Is he/she coming to Tilaberi  
tomorrow?

3. Are you coming to Tilaberi  
tomorrow?

4. Are they coming to Tilaberi  
tomorrow?

M. 1. Are you coming to Niamey to-  
morrow?

2. Is he/she coming to Niamey  
tomorrow?

3. Are you coming to Niamey to-  
morrow?

4. Are they coming to Niamey to-  
morrow?

N. 1. Are you going to Tilaberi to-  
morrow?

2. Is he/she going to Tilaberi  
tomorrow?

3. Are you going to Tilaberi to-  
morrow?

4. Are they going to Tilaberi to-  
morrow?

O. 1. Are you going to Niamey to-  
morrow?

2. Is he/she going to Niamey  
tomorrow?

3. Aran ga koy Niamey suba?

4. I ga koy Niamey suba?

P. 1. Abdu ga ka Tilaberi suba?

2. Amina ga ka Tilaberi suba?

3. Fatu ga ka Tilaberi suba?

4. Maman ga ka Tilaberi suba?

5. Yakuba ga ka Tilaberi suba?

6. Bakari ga ka Tilaberi suba?

Q. 1. Abdu ga koy Niamey suba?

2. Amina ga koy Niamey suba?

3. Fatu ga koy Niamey suba?

4. Maman ga koy Niamey suba?

5. Yakuba ga koy Niamey suba?

6. Bakari ga koy Niamey suba?

R. 1. Ni mo ga ka?

2. A mo ga ka?

3. Aran mo ga ka?

4. I mo ga ka?

3. Are you going to Niamey tomorrow?

4. Are they going to Niamey tomorrow?

P. 1. Is Abdu coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

2. Is Amina coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

3. Is Fatu coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

4. Is Maman coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

5. Is Yakuba coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

6. Is Bakari coming to Tilaberi tomorrow?

Q. 1. Is Abdu going to Niamey tomorrow?

2. Is Amina going to Niamey tomorrow?

3. Is Fatu going to Niamey tomorrow?

4. Is Maman going to Niamey tomorrow?

5. Is Yakuba going to Niamey tomorrow?

6. Is Bakari going to Niamey tomorrow?

R. 1. Are you, too, coming?

2. Is he/she, too, coming?

3. Are you, too, coming?

4. Are they, too, coming?

- S. 1. Ni mo ga koy?  
 2. A mo ga koy?  
 3. Aran mo ga koy?  
 4. I mo ga koy?

- S. 1. Are you, too, going?  
 2. Is he/she, too, going?  
 3. Are you, too, going?  
 4. Are they, too, going?

- T. 1. Abdu nda Amina mo ga ka?  
 2. Amina nda Fatu mo ga ka?  
 3. Fatu nda Maman mo ga ka?  
 4. Maman nda Yakuba mo ga ka?  
 5. Yakuba nda Bakari mo ga ka?  
 6. Bakari nda Abdu mo ga ka?

- T. 1. Are Abdu and Amina, too, coming?  
 2. Are Amina and Fatu, too, coming?  
 3. Are Fatu and Maman, too, coming?  
 4. Are Maman and Yakuba, too, coming?  
 5. Are Yakuba and Bakari, too, coming?  
 6. Are Bakari and Abdu, too, coming?

- U. 1. Abdu nda Amina mo ga koy?  
 2. Amina nda Fatu mo ga koy?  
 3. Fatu nda Maman mo ga koy?  
 4. Maman nda Yakuba mo ga koy?  
 5. Yakuba nda Bakari mo ga koy?  
 6. Bakari nda Abdu mo ga koy?

- U. 1. Are Abdu and Amina, too, going?  
 2. Are Amina and Fatu, too, going?  
 3. Are Fatu and Maman, too, going?  
 4. Are Maman and Yakuba, too, going?  
 5. Are Yakuba and Bakari, too, going?  
 6. Are Bakari and Abdu, too, going?

- V. 1. Oho, ay ga ka.  
 2. Oho, a ga ka.  
 3. Oho, iri ga ka.  
 4. Oho, i ga ka.

- V. 1. Yes, I'm coming.  
 2. Yes, he's/she's coming.  
 3. Yes, we're coming.  
 4. Yes, they're coming.

- W. 1. Oho, ay ga koy.  
 2. Oho, a ga koy.  
 3. Oho, iri ga koy.  
 4. Oho, i ga koy.

- W. 1. Yes, I'm going.  
 2. Yes, he's/she's going.  
 3. Yes, we're going.  
 4. Yes, they're going.

- X. 1. Ha'a, ay si ka.  
 2. Ha'a, a si ka.  
 3. Ha'a, iri si ka.  
 4. Ha'a, i si ka.

- X. 1. No, I'm not coming.  
 2. No, he's/she's not coming.  
 3. No, we're not coming.  
 4. No, they're not coming.

- Y. 1. Ha'a, ay si koy.
2. Ha'a, a si koy.
3. Ha'a, iri si koy.
4. Ha'a, i si koy.

- Y. 1. No, I'm not going.
2. No, he's/she's not going.
3. No, we're not going.
4. No, they're not going.

Phonology Drills

A. <u>i</u> <u>ir</u>	B. <u>ir</u> <u>iri</u>	C. <u>i</u> <u>wi</u>	D. <u>ite</u> <u>idu</u>	E. <u>ini</u> <u>ina</u>	F. <u>isa</u> <u>iso</u>
G. <u>ifo</u> <u>iso</u>	H. <u>iso</u> <u>izo</u>	I. <u>bini</u> <u>bine</u>	J. <u>isa</u> <u>bisa</u>	K. <u>biyo</u> <u>biya</u>	L. <u>tyi</u> <u>di</u>
M. <u>tira</u> <u>dira</u>	N. <u>tyine</u> <u>dyine</u>	O. <u>tyine</u> <u>dyiney</u>	P. <u>tini</u> <u>dini</u>	Q. <u>titi</u> <u>tita</u>	R. <u>titi</u> <u>tyimi</u>
S. <u>tyire</u> <u>dyiri</u>	T. <u>diya</u> <u>diraw</u>	U. <u>diya</u> <u>dyir</u>	V. <u>dyini</u> <u>hini</u>	W. <u>hima</u> <u>hina</u>	X. <u>hine</u> <u>hirey</u>
Y. <u>hina</u> <u>hino</u>	Z. <u>hino</u> <u>hiyo</u>	AA. <u>ni</u> <u>nina</u>	BB. <u>hin</u> <u>nin</u>	CC. <u>nina</u> <u>niger</u>	DD. <u>iri</u> <u>siri</u>

UNIT 6

Dialogue 1

ni  
baba  
A: Ni baba<sup>1</sup> ga koy Niamey suba?

your (sg.)  
father (indef.)

A: Is your father going to Niamey tomorrow?

ay  
B: Oho, ay baba<sup>1</sup> ga koy Niamey suba.

my  
B: Yes, my father is going to Niamey tomorrow.

nya  
A: Ni nya<sup>1</sup> ga koy?

mother (indef.)  
A: Is your mother going?

B: Ha'a, ay nya<sup>1</sup> si koy.

B: No, my mother isn't going.

Dialogue 2

aran  
arme  
A: Aran arme<sup>1</sup> ga koy Tilaberi suba?

your (pl.)  
brother of a female (def./indef.)

A: Is your brother going to Tilaberi tomorrow?

iri  
B: Oho, iri arme<sup>1</sup> ga koy Tilaberi suba.

our  
B: Yes, our brother is going to Tilaberi tomorrow.

woyme  
A: Aran woyme<sup>1</sup> ga koy?

sister of a male (def./indef.)  
A: Is your sister going?

B: Ha'a, iri woyme si koy.

B: No, our sister isn't going.

### Dialogue 3

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a  | his/her   |
| babo   | father (def.)                                       |
| hu'kuna  | today   |
| A: A babo <sup>1</sup> ga ka Niamey hu'kuna?           | A: Is his father coming to Niamey today?            |
| nyan'o   | mother (def.)                                       |
| B: Cho. A nyan'o <sup>1</sup> mo ga ka Niamey hu'kuna. | B: Yes. His mother, too, is coming to Niamey today. |
| A: A woyme <sup>1</sup> ga ka?                         | A: Is his sister coming?                            |
| B: Ha'a, a si ka.                                      | B: No, she isn't coming.                            |

### Dialogue 4

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| i  | their   |
| A: I babo <sup>1</sup> ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna?           | A: Is their father coming to Tilaberi today?            |
| B: Cho. I nyan'o <sup>1</sup> mo ga ka Tilaberi hu'kuna. | B: Yes. Their mother, too, is coming to Tilaberi today. |
| A: I arme <sup>1</sup> ga ka?                            | A: Is their sister coming?                              |
| B: Ha'a, a si ka.  | B: No, she isn't coming.                                |

### Note on the Dialogues

1. Following a possessive pronoun, the noun takes the definite form. However, with "father" and "mother", ay, ni, iri, and aran take the indefinite baba and nya, whereas a and i take the definite babo and nyan'o. Like kwara, arme and woyme are identical in the definite and indefinite.

## Structural Drills

<u>ay</u>	'my'	<u>iri</u>	'our'
<u>ni</u>	'your (sg.)'	<u>aran</u>	'your (pl.)'
<u>a</u>	'his/her'	<u>i</u>	'their'

- A. 1. Ni baba ga koy?  
2. Ni baba ga koy Niamey?  
3. Ni baba ga koy Niamey suba?

- A. 1. Is your father going?  
2. Is your father going to Niamey?  
3. Is your father going to Niamey tomorrow?

- B. 1. A babo ga koy?  
2. A babo ga koy Niamey?  
3. A babo ga koy Niamey suba?

- B. 1. Is his/her father going?  
2. Is his/her father going to Niamey?  
3. Is his/her father going to Niamey tomorrow?

- C. 1. Aran baba ga koy?  
2. Aran baba ga koy Niamey?  
3. Aran baba ga koy Niamey suba?

- C. 1. Is your father going?  
2. Is your father going to Niamey?  
3. Is your father going to Niamey tomorrow?

- D. 1. I babo ga koy?  
2. I babo ga koy Niamey?  
3. I babo ga koy Niamey suba?

- D. 1. Is their father going?  
2. Is their father going to Niamey?  
3. Is their father going to Niamey tomorrow?

- E. 1. Ni nya ga koy?  
2. Ni nya ga koy Niamey?  
3. Ni nya ga koy Niamey suba?

- E. 1. Is your mother going?  
2. Is your mother going to Niamey?  
3. Is your mother going to Niamey tomorrow?

- F. 1. A nyan'o ga koy?  
 2. A nyan'o ga koy Niamey?  
 3. A nyan'o ga koy Niamey  
suba?

- G. 1. Aran nya ga koy?  
 2. Aran nya ga koy Niamey?  
 3. Aran nya ga koy Niamey  
suba?

- H. 1. I nyan'o ga koy?  
 2. I nyan'o ga koy Niamey?  
 3. I nyan'o ga koy Niamey  
suba?

- I. 1. Ni arne ga ka?  
 2. Ni arne ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. Ni arne ga ka Tilaberi hu'  
kuna?

- J. 1. A arne ga ka?  
 2. A arne ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. A arne ga ka Tilaberi hu'  
kuna?

- K. 1. Aran arne ga ka?  
 2. Aran arne ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. Aran arne ga ka Tilaberi  
hu'kuna?

- L. 1. I arne ga ka?  
 2. I arne ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. I arne ga ka Tilaberi hu'  
kuna?

- F. 1. Is his/her mother going?  
 2. Is his/her mother going to Niamey?  
 3. Is his/her mother going to Niamey  
 tomorrow?

- G. 1. Is your mother going?  
 2. Is your mother going to Niamey?  
 3. Is your mother going to Niamey  
 tomorrow?

- H. 1. Is their mother going?  
 2. Is their mother going to Niamey?  
 3. Is their mother going to Niamey  
 tomorrow?

- I. 1. Is your brother coming?  
 2. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- J. 1. Is her brother coming?  
 2. Is her brother coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is her brother coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- K. 1. Is your brother coming?  
 2. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is your brother coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- L. 1. Is their brother coming?  
 2. Is their brother coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is their brother coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- M. 1. Ni woyme ga ka?  
 2. Ni woyme ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. Ni woyme ga ka Tilaberi  
hu'kuna?

- N. 1. A woyme ga ka?  
 2. A woyme ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. A woyme ga ka Tilaberi  
hu'kuna?

- O. 1. Aran woyme ga ka?  
 2. Aran woyme ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. Aran woyme ga ka Tilaberi  
hu'kuna?

- P. 1. I woyme ga ka?  
 2. I woyme ga ka Tilaberi?  
 3. I woyme ga ka Tilaberi  
hu'kuna?

- Q. 1. Cho, ay baba ga koy.  
 2. Cho, ay baba ga koy Niamay.  
 3. Cho, ay baba ga koy Niamay  
suba.

- R. 1. Cho, a babo ga koy.  
 2. Cho, a babo ga koy Niamay.  
 3. Cho, a babo ga koy Niamay  
suba.

- S. 1. Cho, iri baba ga koy.  
 2. Cho, iri baba ga koy Niamay.  
 3. Cho, iri baba ga koy Niamay  
suba.

- M. 1. Is your sister coming?  
 2. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- N. 1. Is his sister coming?  
 2. Is his sister coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is his sister coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- O. 1. Is your sister coming?  
 2. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is your sister coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- P. 1. Is their sister coming?  
 2. Is their sister coming to Tilaberi?  
 3. Is their sister coming to Tilaberi  
 today?

- Q. 1. Yes, my father is going.  
 2. Yes, my father is going to Niamay.  
 3. Yes, my father is going to Niamay  
 tomorrow.

- R. 1. Yes, his/her father is going.  
 2. Yes, his/her father is going to Niamay.  
 3. Yes, his/her father is going to Niamay  
 tomorrow.

- S. 1. Yes, our father is going.  
 2. Yes, our father is going to Niamay.  
 3. Yes, our father is going to Niamay  
 tomorrow.

- T. 1. Oho, i babo ga koy.  
 2. Oho, i babo ga koy Niamey.  
 3. Oho, i babo ga koy Niamey  
suba.

- U. 1. Oho, ay nya ga koy.  
 2. Oho, ay nya ga koy Niamey.  
 3. Oho, ay nya ga koy Niamey  
suba.

- V. 1. Oho, a nyan'o ga koy.  
 2. Oho, a nyan'o ga koy Nia-  
mey.  
 3. Oho, a nyan'o ga koy Nia-  
mey suba.

- W. 1. Oho, iri nya ga koy.  
 2. Oho, iri nya ga koy Niamey.  
 3. Oho, iri nya ga koy Niamey  
suba.

- X. 1. Oho, i nyan'o ga koy.  
 2. Oho, i nyan'o ga koy Nia-  
mey.  
 3. Oho, i nyan'o ga koy Nia-  
mey suba.

- Y. 1. Ha'a, ay arne si ka.  
 2. Ha'a, ay arne si ka Tila-  
beri.  
 3. Ha'a, ay arne si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- T. 1. Yes, their father is going.  
 2. Yes, their father is going to  
 Niamey.  
 3. Yes, their father is going to  
 Niamey tomorrow.

- U. 1. Yes, my mother is going.  
 2. Yes, my mother is going to Niamey.  
 3. Yes, my mother is going to Niamey  
 tomorrow.

- V. 1. Yes, his/her mother is going.  
 2. Yes, his/her mother is going to  
 Niamey.  
 3. Yes, his/her mother is going to  
 Niamey tomorrow.

- W. 1. Yes, our mother is going.  
 2. Yes, our mother is going to Niamey.  
 3. Yes, our mother is going to Niamey  
 tomorrow.

- X. 1. Yes, their mother is going.  
 2. Yes, their mother is going to  
 Niamey.  
 3. Yes, their mother is going to  
 Niamey tomorrow.

- Y. 1. No, my brother isn't coming.  
 2. No, my brother isn't coming to  
 Tilaberi.  
 3. No, my brother isn't coming to  
 Tilaberi today.

- Z. 1. Ha'a, a arme si ka.
2. Ha'a, a arme si ka Tila-  
beri.
3. Ha'a, a arme si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- AA. 1. Ha'a, iri arme si ka.
2. Ha'a, iri arme si ka Tila-  
beri.
3. Ha'a, iri arme si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- BB. 1. Ha'a, i arme si ka.
2. Ha'a, i arme si ka Tila-  
beri.
3. Ha'a, i arme si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- CC. 1. Ha'a, ay woyme si ka.
2. Ha'a, ay woyme si ka Tila-  
beri.
3. Ha'a, ay woyme si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- DD. 1. Ha'a, a woyme si ka.
2. Ha'a, a woyme si ka Tila-  
beri.
3. Ha'a, a woyme si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- EE. 1. Ha'a, iri woyme si ka.
2. Ha'a, iri woyme si ka Tila-  
beri.
3. Ha'a, iri woyme si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- Z. 1. No, her brother isn't coming.
2. No, her brother isn't coming to  
Tilaberi.
3. No, her brother isn't coming to  
Tilaberi today.

- AA. 1. No, our brother isn't coming.
2. No, our brother isn't coming to  
Tilaberi.
3. No, our brother isn't coming to  
Tilaberi today.

- BB. 1. No, their brother isn't coming.
2. No, their brother isn't coming  
to Tilaberi.
3. No, their brother isn't coming  
to Tilaberi today.

- CC. 1. No, my sister isn't coming.
2. No, my sister isn't coming to  
Tilaberi.
3. No, my sister isn't coming to  
Tilaberi today.

- DD. 1. No, his sister isn't coming.
2. No, his sister isn't coming to  
Tilaberi.
3. No, his sister isn't coming to  
Tilaberi today.

- EE. 1. No, our sister isn't coming.
2. No, our sister isn't coming to  
Tilaberi.
3. No, our sister isn't coming to  
Tilaberi today.

- FF. 1. Ha'a, i woyme si ka.  
 2. Ha'a, i woyme si ka Tila-  
beri.  
 3. Ha'a, i woyme si ka Tila-  
beri hu'kuna.

- FF. 1. No, their sister isn't coming.  
 2. No, their sister isn'tt coming to  
 Tilaberi.  
 3. No, their sister isn't coming to  
 Tilaberi today.

- GG. 1. Ay nya mo ga ka Niamey  
 hu'kuna.  
 2. A nyan'o mo ga ka Niamey  
 hu'kuna.  
 3. Iri nya mo ga ka Niamey  
 hu'kuna.  
 4. aI nyan'o mo ga ka Niamey  
 hu'kuna.

- GG. 1. My mother, too, is coming to Nia-  
 mey today.  
 2. His/Her mother, too, is coming to  
 Niamey today.  
 3. Our mother, too, is coming to Nia-  
 mey today.  
 4. Their mother, too, is coming to  
 Niamey today.

- HH. 1. Ay baba mo ga koy Tila-  
 beri suba.  
 2. A babo mo ga koy Tila-  
 beri suba.  
 3. Iri baba mo ga koy Tila-  
 beri suba.  
 4. I babo mo ga koy Tila-  
 beri suba.

- HH. 1. My father, too, is going to Tila-  
 beri tomorrow.  
 2. His/Her father, too, is going to  
 Tilaberi tomorrow.  
 3. Our father, too, is going to Tila-  
 beri tomorrow.  
 4. Their father, too, is going to  
 Tilaberi tomorrow.

### Phonology Drills

- |                 |                |                 |                 |                   |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| A. <u>dyabi</u> | B. <u>titi</u> | C. <u>gati</u>  | D. <u>kwayi</u> | E. <u>tali</u>    | F. <u>ini</u>   | G. <u>tini</u> |
| <u>dyirbi</u>   | <u>gati</u>    | <u>gadi</u>     | <u>gayi</u>     | <u>Ali</u>        | <u>hini</u>     | <u>dini</u>    |
| H. <u>bani</u>  | I. <u>bini</u> | J. <u>hayni</u> | K. <u>iri</u>   | L. <u>beri</u>    | M. <u>tyeri</u> | N. <u>hari</u> |
| <u>kani</u>     | <u>dyini</u>   | <u>doni</u>     | <u>siri</u>     | <u>feri</u>       | <u>beri</u>     | <u>fori</u>    |
| O. <u>bori</u>  | P. <u>bori</u> | Q. <u>kuri</u>  | R. <u>tyire</u> | S. <u>burtyin</u> | T. <u>feri</u>  |                |
| <u>fori</u>     | <u>zori</u>    | <u>hari</u>     | <u>dyere</u>    | <u>hintyin</u>    | <u>Afrik</u>    |                |

UNIT 7

Dialogue 1

A: Ni no wala?

A: Is it you?

B: Oho, ay no.

B: Yes, it's I.

Dialogue 2

A: Aran no wala?

A: Is it you?

B: Oho, iri no.

B: Yes, it's we.

Dialogue 3

A: Yakuba no wala?

A: Is it Yakuba?

i'ga

he/she (intensive form)

B: Oho, i'ga no.

B: Yes, it's he.

Dialogue 4

A: Amina nda Fatu no wala?

A: Is it Amina and Fatu?

i'gey

they (intensive form)

B: Oho, i'gey no.

B: Yes, it's they.

Dialogue 5

may

who

A: May no?

A: Who is it?

B: Ay arne no.

B: It's my brother.

ma  
A: Mate a ma?

B: A ma Maman.

to call, name

A: What's his name?

B: His name is Maman.

### Dialogue 6

A: May no?

A: Who is it?

B: Bakari no.

B: It's Bakari.

A: Mate a kwara ma?

A: What's the name of his village?

Filindye<sup>1</sup>

Filindye

B: A ma Filindye.

B: It's called Filindye.

### Dialogue 7

A: Mate ni ma?

A: What's your name?

B: Ay ma Abdu.

B: My name is Abdu.

ga<sup>2</sup>

is/are/was/were/will be

beri

big (indef. sg.)

A: Ni kwara ga beri<sup>3</sup> wala?

A: Is your village big?

B: Ha'a, ay kwara ga kayna no.

B: No, my village is small.

### Dialogue 8

A: Mate aran kwara ma?

A: What's the name of your village?

Doso<sup>1</sup>

Doso

B: A ma Doso.

B: It's called Doso.

A: Aran kwara ga kayna wala?

A: Is your village small?

B: Ha'a, iri kwara ga beri no.

B: No, our village is big.

A: Aran fuwo ga beri wala?

A: Is your house small?

B: Oho.

B: Yes.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. A town. The French spelling of Filindye, seen on maps and signs, is Filingué.
2. Followed by an adjective, ga signals the Present; however, with certain adverbs of time, it signals either the Past or the Future.
3. Following ga, the indefinite form of the adjective is used.

### Structural Drills

A. 1. Ay no.

2. Ni no.

3. I'ga no.

4. Iri no.

5. Aran no.

6. I'gey no.

B. 1. Ni no wala?

2. I'ga no wala?

3. Aran no wala?

4. I'gey no wala?

C. 1. Ni no wala?

Oho, ay no.

2. I'ga no wala?

Oho, i'ga no.

3. Aran no wala?

Oho, iri no.

4. I'gey no wala?

Oho, i'gey no.

A. 1. It's I.

2. It's you.

3. It's he/she.

4. It's we.

5. It's you.

6. It's they.

B. 1. Is it you?

2. Is it he/she?

3. Is it you?

4. Is it they?

C. 1. Is it you?

Yes, it's I.

2. Is it he/she?

Yes, it's he/she.

3. Is it you?

Yes, it's we.

4. Is it they?

Yes, it's they.

D. 1. May no?  
Bakari no.

2. May no?  
Yakuba no.

3. May no?  
Fatu no.

4. May no?  
Abdu no.

5. May no?  
Amina no.

6. May no?  
Maman no.

E. 1. Bakari no wala?

2. Yakuba no wala?

3. Fatu no wala?

4. Abdu no wala?

5. Amina no wala?

6. Maman no wala?

F. 1. Ay baba no.

2. Ay nya no.

3. Ay arwa no.

4. Ay woywe no.

5. Ay faro no.

6. Ay kwara no.

7. Ay fuwo no.

G. 1. Ni baba no.

2. Ni nya no.

3. Ni arwa no.

4. Ni woywe no.

5. Ni faro no.

D. 1. Who is it?  
It's Bakari.

2. Who is it?  
It's Yakuba.

3. Who is it?  
It's Fatu.

4. Who is it?  
It's Abdu.

5. Who is it?  
It's Amina.

6. Who is it?  
It's Maman.

E. 1. Is it Bakari?

2. Is it Yakuba?

3. Is it Fatu?

4. Is it Abdu?

5. Is it Amina?

6. Is it Maman?

F. 1. It's my father.

2. It's my mother.

3. It's my brother.

4. It's my sister.

5. It's my field.

6. It's my village.

7. It's my house.

G. 1. It's your father.

2. It's your mother.

3. It's your brother.

4. It's your sister.

5. It's your field.

6. Ni kwara no.
7. Ni fuwo no.

6. It's your village.
7. It's your house.

- H.
1. A babo no.
  2. A nyan'o no.
  3. A arɛ no.
  4. A woyɛ no.
  5. A faro no.
  6. A kwara no.
  7. A fuwo no.

- H.
1. It's his/her father.
  2. It's his/her mother.
  3. It's her brother.
  4. It's his sister.
  5. It's his/her field.
  6. It's his/her village.
  7. It's his/her house.

- I.
1. Iri baba no.
  2. Iri nya no.
  3. Iri arɛ no.
  4. Iri woyɛ no.
  5. Iri faro no.
  6. Iri kwara no.
  7. Iri fuwo no.

- I.
1. It's our father.
  2. It's our mother.
  3. It's our brother.
  4. It's our sister.
  5. It's our field.
  6. It's our village.
  7. It's our house.

- J.
1. Aran babó no.
  2. Aran nya no.
  3. Aran arɛ no.
  4. Aran woyɛ no.
  5. Aran faro no.
  6. Aran kwara no.
  7. Aran fuwo no.

- J.
1. It's your father.
  2. It's your mother.
  3. It's your brother.
  4. It's your sister.
  5. It's your field.
  6. It's your village.
  7. It's your house.

- K.
1. I babo no.
  2. I nyan'o no.
  3. I arɛ no.
  4. I woyɛ no.
  5. I faro no.
  6. I kwara no.
  7. I fuwo no.

- K.
1. It's their father.
  2. It's their mother.
  3. It's their brother.
  4. It's their sister.
  5. It's their field.
  6. It's their village.
  7. It's their house.

- L. 1. Ay na Fatu.
2. Ay na Bakari.
3. Ay na Abdu.
4. Ay na Amina.
5. Ay na Yakuba.
6. Ay na Maman.

- L. 1. My name is Fatu.
2. My name is Bakari.
3. My name is Abdu.
4. My name is Amina.
5. My name is Yakuba.
6. My name is Maman.

- M. 1. A na Fatu.
2. A na Bakari.
3. A na Abdu.
4. A na Amina.
5. A na Yakuba.
6. A na Maman.

- M. 1. Her name is Fatu.
2. His name is Bakari.
3. His name is Abdu.
4. Her name is Amina.
5. His name is Yakuba.
6. His name is Maman.

- N. 1. Mate ni na?  
Ay na Fatu.
2. Mate ni na?  
Ay na Bakari.
3. Mate ni na?  
Ay na Abdu.
4. Mate ni na?  
Ay na Amina.
5. Mate ni na?  
Ay na Yakuba.
6. Mate ni na?  
Ay na Maman.

- N. 1. What's your name?  
My name is Fatu.
2. What's your name?  
My name is Bakari.
3. What's your name?  
My name is Abdu.
4. What's your name?  
My name is Amina.
5. What's your name?  
My name is Yakuba.
6. What's your name?  
My name is Maman.

- O. 1. Mate a na?  
A na Fatu.
2. Mate a na?  
A na Bakari.
3. Mate a na?  
A na Abdu.

- O. 1. What's her name?  
Her name is Fatu.
2. What's his name?  
His name is Bakari.
3. What's his name?  
His name is Abdu.

4. Mate a ma?  
A ma Amina.

5. Mate a ma?  
A ma Yakuba.

6. Mate a ma?  
A ma Maman.

4. What's her name?  
Her name is Amina.

5. What's his name?  
His name is Yakuba.

6. What's his name?  
His name is Maman.

P. 1. Mate ni kwara ma?  
2. Mate a kwara ma?  
3. Mate aran kwara ma?  
4. Mate i kwara ma?

P. 1. What's the name of your village?  
2. What's the name of his/her village?  
3. What's the name of your village?  
4. What's the name of their village?

Q. 1. Ay kwara na Tilaberi.  
2. Ay kwara na Filindye.  
3. Ay kwara na Doso.

Q. 1. My village is called Tilaberi.  
2. My village is called Filindye.  
3. My village is called Doso.

R. 1. A kwara na Tilaberi.  
2. A kwara na Filindye.  
3. A kwara na Doso.

R. 1. His/Her village is called Tilaberi.  
2. His/Her village is called Filindye.  
3. His/Her village is called Doso.

S. 1. Iri kwara na Tilaberi.  
2. Iri kwara na Filindye.  
3. Iri kwara na Doso.

S. 1. Our village is called Tilaberi.  
2. Our village is called Filindye.  
3. Our village is called Doso.

T. 1. I kwara na Tilaberi.  
2. I kwara na Filindye.  
3. I kwara na Doso.

T. 1. Their village is called Tilaberi.  
2. Their village is called Filindye.  
3. Their village is called Doso.

U. 1. Mate ni kwara ma?  
A ma Tilaberi.  
2. Mate a kwara ma?  
A ma Filindye.

U. 1. What's the name of your village?  
It's called Tilaberi.  
2. What's the name of his/her village?  
It's called Filindye.

3. Mate aran kwara na?

A na Doso.

4. Mate i kwara na?

A na Filindye.

V. 1. Ni kwara ga beri wala?

2. A kwara ga beri wala?

3. Aran kwara ga beri wala?

4. I kwara ga beri wala?

W. 1. Ni fuwo ga kayna wala?

2. A fuwo ga kayna wala?

3. Aran fuwo ga kayna wala?

4. I fuwo ga kayna wala?

X. 1. Ay kwara ga beri no.

2. Ni kwara ga beri no.

3. A kwara ga beri no.

4. Iri kwara ga beri no.

5. Aran kwara ga beri no.

6. I kwara ga beri no.

Y. 1. Ay fuwo ga kayna no.

2. Ni fuwo ga kayna no.

3. A fuwo ga kayna no.

4. Iri fuwo ga kayna no.

5. Aran fuwo ga kayna no.

6. I fuwo ga kayna no.

Z. 1. Ni faro ga beri wala?

Ha'a, ay faro ga kayna no.

2. Aran faro ga kayna wala?

Ha'a, iri faro ga beri no.

3. What's the name of your village?

It's called Doso.

4. What's the name of their village?

It's called Filindye.

V. 1. Is your village big?

2. Is his/her village big?

3. Is your village big?

4. Is their village big?

W. 1. Is your house small?

2. Is his/her house small?

3. Is your house small?

4. Is their house small?

X. 1. My village is big.

2. Your village is big.

3. His/Her village is big.

4. Our village is big.

5. Your village is big.

6. Their village is big.

Y. 1. My house is small.

2. Your house is small.

3. His/Her house is small.

4. Our house is small.

5. Your house is small.

6. Their house is small.

Z. 1. Is your field big?

No, my field is small.

2. Is your field small?

No, our field is big.

3. A faro ga beri wala?

Ha'a, a faro ga kayna no.

4. I faro ga kayna wala?

Ha'a, i faro ga beri no.

3. Is his/her field big?

No, his/her field is small.

4. Is their field small?

No, their field is big.

Phonology Drills

A. te

B. te

C. tye

D. ne

E. se

F. tye

G. beri

de

tye

tyew

ne

ye

ye

bercy

H. bercy

I. teka

J. feri

K. ne

L. seno

M. tyew

N. tyebe

bero

tera

fema

newo

zenu

tyebe

tyeme

O. tyeri

P. tyere

Q. tyele

dyeri

dyeri

tyela

UNIT 8

Dialogue 1

may

A: May kwara no?

B: Ay kwara no.

A: Maman kwara mo no?

B: Oho, a kwara no.

whose

A: Whose village is it?

B: It's my village.

A: Is it Maman's village, too?

B: Yes, it's his village.

Dialogue 2

A: May kwara no?

wone

B: Ay wone no.

A: Maman wone mo no?

B: Oho, a wone no.

A: Whose village is it?

(signals possession in the singular)

B: It's mine.

A: Is it Maman's, too?

B: Yes, it's his.

Dialogue 3

A: Aran fuwo no wala?

manti

B: Ha'a, manti iri fuwo no.

A: Yakuba fuwo no wala?

B: Ha'a, manti a fuwo no.

A: Abdu nda Amina fuwo no wala?

B: Oho, i fuwo no.

A: Is it your house?

(signals the negative in the Present)

B: No, it isn't our house.

A: Is it Yakuba's house?

B: No, it isn't his house.

A: Is it Abdu and Amina's house?

B: Yes, it's their house.

### Dialogue 4

A: Aran fuwo no wala?

B: Ha'a, manti iri wone no.

A: Yakuba wone no wala?

B: Ha'a, manti a wone no.

A: Abdu nda Amina wone no wala?

B: Oho, i wone no.

A: Is it your house?

B: No, it isn't ours.

A: Is it Yakuba's?

B: No, it isn't his.

A: Is it Abdu and Amina's?

B: Yes, it's theirs.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Ay wone no.  
2. Mi wone no.  
3. A wone no.  
4. Iri wone no.  
5. Aran wone no.  
6. I wone no.

- B. 1. May kwara no?  
Ay kwara no.  
2. May kwara no?  
Ay wone no.  
3. May kwara no?  
Maman kwara no.  
4. May kwara no?  
Maman wone no.  
5. May kwara no?  
A kwara no.  
6. May kwara no?  
A wone no.

- A. 1. It's mine.  
2. It's yours.  
3. It's his/hers.  
4. It's ours.  
5. It's yours.  
6. It's theirs.

- B. 1. Whose village is it?  
It's my village.  
2. Whose village is it?  
It's mine.  
3. Whose village is it?  
It's Maman's village.  
4. Whose village is it?  
It's Maman's.  
5. Whose village is it?  
It's his village.  
6. Whose village is it?  
It's his.

- C. 1. May kwara no?  
Iri kwara no.
2. May kwara no?  
Iri wone no.
3. May kwara no?  
Abdu nda Amina kwara no.
4. May kwara no?  
Abdu nda Amina wone no.
5. May kwara no?  
I kwara no.
6. May kwara no?  
I wone no.

- D. 1. Maman kwara no no?  
2. Abdu kwara no no?  
3. Amina kwara no no?  
4. Yakuba kwara no no?  
5. Bakari kwara no no?  
6. Fatu kwara no no?

- E. 1. Maman wone no no?  
2. Abdu wone no no?  
3. Amina wone no no?  
4. Yakuba wone no no?  
5. Bakari wone no no?  
6. Fatu wone no no?

- F. 1. Maman kwara no no?  
Ha's, Abdu wone no.
2. Abdu kwara no no?  
Ha's, Amina wone no.

- C. 1. Whose village is it?  
It's our village.
2. Whose village is it?  
It's ours.
3. Whose village is it?  
It's Abdu and Amina's village.
4. Whose village is it?  
It's Abdu and Amina's.
5. Whose village is it?  
It's their village.
6. Whose village is it?  
It's theirs.

- D. 1. Is it Maman's village, too?  
2. Is it Abdu's village, too?  
3. Is it Amina's village, too?  
4. Is it Yakuba's village, too?  
5. Is it Bakari's village, too?  
6. Is it Fatu's village, too?

- E. 1. Is it Maman's, too?  
2. Is it Abdu's, too?  
3. Is it Amina's, too?  
4. Is it Yakuba's, too?  
5. Is it Bakari's, too?  
6. Is it Fatu's, too?

- F. 1. Is it Maman's village, too?  
No, it's Abdu's.
2. Is it Abdu's village, too?  
No, it's Amina's.

3. Amina kwara mo no?  
Ha'a, Yakuba wone no.

4. Yakuba kwara mo no?  
Ha'a, Bakari wone no.

5. Bakari kwara mo no?  
Ha'a, Fatu wone no.

6. Fatu kwara mo no?  
Ha'a, Maman wone no.

3. Is it Amina's village, too?  
No, it's Yakuba's.

4. Is it Yakuba's village, too?  
No, it's Bakari's.

5. Is it Bakari's village, too?  
No, it's Fatu's.

6. Is it Fatu's village, too?  
No, it's Maman's.

G. 1. Ni fuwo no wala?

2. A fuwo no wala?

3. Aran fuwo no wala?

4. I fuwo no wala?

G. 1. Is it your house?

2. Is it his/her house?

3. Is it your house?

4. Is it their house?

H. 1. Maman fuwo no wala?

2. Abdu fuwo no wala?

3. Amina fuwo no wala?

4. Yakuba fuwo no wala?

5. Bakari fuwo no wala?

6. Fatu fuwo no wala?

H. 1. Is it Maman's house?

2. Is it Abdu's house?

3. Is it Amina's house?

4. Is it Yakuba's house?

5. Is it Bakari's house?

6. Is it Fatu's house?

I. 1. Maman wone no wala?

2. Abdu wone no wala?

3. Amina wone no wala?

4. Yakuba wone no wala?

5. Bakari wone no wala?

6. Fatu wone no wala?

I. 1. Is it Maman's?

2. Is it Abdu's?

3. Is it Amina's?

4. Is it Yakuba's?

5. Is it Bakari's?

6. Is it Fatu's?

J. 1. Ni wone no wala?

2. A wone no wala?

3. Aran wone no wala?

4. I wone no wala?

J. 1. Is it yours?

2. Is it his/hers?

3. Is it yours?

4. Is it theirs?

K. 1. Ni wone no wala?

Ha'a, a wone no.

2. Aran wone no wala?

Ha'a, i wone no.

3. A wone no wala?

Ha'a, ay wone no.

4. I wone no wala?

Ha'a, iri wone no.

L. 1. Manti Maman fuwo no.

2. Manti Abdu fuwo no.

3. Manti Amina fuwo no.

4. Manti Yakuba fuwo no.

5. Manti Bakari fuwo no.

6. Manti Fatu fuwo no.

M. 1. Manti Maman wone no.

2. Manti Abdu wone no.

3. Manti Amina wone no.

4. Manti Yakuba wone no.

5. Manti Bakari wone no.

6. Manti Fatu wone no.

N. 1. Manti ay fuwo no.

2. Manti ni fuwo no.

3. Manti a fuwo no.

4. Manti iri fuwo no.

5. Manti aran fuwo no.

6. Manti i fuwo no.

O. 1. Manti ay wone no.

2. Manti ni wone no.

3. Manti a wone no.

4. Manti iri wone no.

5. Manti aran wone no.

6. Manti i wone no.

K. 1. Is it yours?

No, it's his/hers.

2. Is it yours?

No, it's theirs.

3. Is it his/hers?

No, it's mine.

4. Is it theirs?

No, it's ours.

L. 1. It isn't Maman's house.

2. It isn't Abdu's house.

3. It isn't Amina's house.

4. It isn't Yakuba's house.

5. It isn't Bakari's house.

6. It isn't Fatu's house.

M. 1. It isn't Maman's.

2. It isn't Abdu's.

3. It isn't Amina's.

4. It isn't Yakuba's.

5. It isn't Bakari's.

6. It isn't Fatu's.

N. 1. It isn't my house.

2. It isn't your house.

3. It isn't his/her house.

4. It isn't our house.

5. It isn't your house.

6. It isn't their house.

O. 1. It isn't mine.

2. It isn't yours.

3. It isn't his/hers.

4. It isn't ours.

5. It isn't yours.

6. It isn't theirs.

P. 1. Ni fuwo no wala?

Ha'a, manti ay wone no.

2. Aran faro no wala?

Ha'a, manti iri wone no.

3. A kwara no wala?

Ha'a, manti a wone no.

4. I fuwo no wala?

Ha'a, manti i wone no.

Q. 1. Maman fuwo no wala?

Ha'a, manti a fuwo no.

2. Abdu faro no wala?

Ha'a, manti a faro no.

3. Amina kwara no wala?

Ha'a, manti a kwara no.

R. 1. Yakuba fuwo no wala?

Ha'a, manti a wone no.

2. Bakari faro no wala?

Ha'a, manti a wone no.

3. Fatu kwara no wala?

Ha'a, manti a wone no.

S. 1. Maman nda, Abdu fuwo no wala?

Ha'a, manti i wone no.

2. Yakuba nda Amina faro no wala?

Ha'a, manti i wone no.

3. Bakari nda Fatu kwara no wala?

Ha'a, manti i wone no.

P. 1. Is it your house?

No, it isn't mine.

2. Is it your field?

No, it isn't ours.

3. Is it his/her village?

No, it isn't his/hers.

4. Is it their village?

No, it isn't theirs.

Q. 1. Is it Maman's house?

No, it isn't his house.

2. Is it Abdu's field?

No, it isn't his field.

3. Is it Amina's village?

No, it isn't her village.

R. 1. Is it Yakuba's house?

No, it isn't his.

2. Is it Bakari's field?

No, it isn't his.

3. Is it Fatu's village?

No, it isn't hers.

S. 1. Is it Maman and Abdu's house?

No, it isn't theirs.

2. Is it Yakuba and Amina's field?

No, it isn't theirs.

3. Is it Bakari and Fatu's village?

No, it isn't theirs.

Phonology Drills

A. tyeme  
tyebe

B. ite  
wate

C. mate  
wate

D. goye  
yaye

E. bine  
hine

F. wone  
tyine

G. diure  
dole

H. tyale  
neru

I. tyebe  
tyese

J. Niger  
Zinder

K. ey  
dey

L. ey  
zey

M. beru  
boreu

N. garu  
daru

O. daru  
daru

P. dyinu  
Niameu

Q. kuru  
goru

R. koyu  
kwaru

S. gurdyu  
sartyu

T. mayu  
kwaru

U. wanu  
fonyu

V. fonyu  
fonyu

W. fonyu  
fuwu

X. hiru  
hayu

Y. hayu  
habu

UNIT 9  
Dialogue 1

A: Ni kani bani Abdu?

A: How are you, Abdu?

B: Bani samey. Ni kani bani?

B: Very well. How are you?

A: Bani samey. Man Bakari  
go?

A: Very well. Where's Bakari?

B: A go habo ra.

B: He's in the market.

A: Mate a go?

A: How is he?

B: A go bani samey.

B: He's very well.

Dialogue 2

A: Man Fatu nda Amina go?

A: Where are Fatu and Amina?

B: I go kwara ra.

B: They're in the village.

A: Mate i go?

A: How are they?

B: I go bani samey.

B: They're very well.

Dialogue 3

A: Fofo.

A: Hello.

B: Ngwoya.

B: Hello.

A: Mate ni go?

A: How are you?

B: Ay go bani samey.

B: I'm very well.

Dialogue 4

sanka  
A: Mate ni sanko go?

dya'te  
B: A ga dya'te.

gumo  
A: A ga dya'te gumo?

B: Ha'a, a si dya'te gumo.

child (def./indef.)  
A: How's your child?

sick (indef. sg.)  
B: He's sick.

very  
A: Is he very sick?

B: No, he isn't very sick.

Dialogue 5

A: Kwara ga beri?

B: Ha'a, a si beri. A ga kayna gumo.

hanan  
A: A ga hanan?

B: Ha'a, a si hanan.

sibi  
A ga sibi gumo.

A: Is the village big?

B: No, it isn't big. It's very small.

clean (def./indef. sg.)  
A: Is it clean?

B: No, it isn't clean.

dirty (def./indef. sg.)  
It's very dirty.

Dialogue 6

A: Fuwo ga kayna?

B: Ha'a, a si kayna. A ga beri gumo.

A: A ga sibi?

B: Ha'a, a si sibi. A ga hanan gumo.

A: Is the house small?

B: No, it isn't small. It's very big.

A: Is it dirty?

B: No, it isn't dirty. It's very clean.

### Note on the Dialogues

1. Certain words, like dya'te, beri, kayna, hanan, and zibi, may function as either verbs or adjectives. Here they function as predicate adjectives, following ga or si. In such structures, these words take the indefinite form.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Man Bakari go?  
2. Man Fatu go?  
3. Man Amina go?  
4. Man Yakuba go?  
5. Man Abdu go?  
6. Man Maman go?
- A. 1. Where's Bakari?  
2. Where's Fatu?  
3. Where's Amina?  
4. Where's Yakuba?  
5. Where's Abdu?  
6. Where's Maman?
- B. 1. Man Bakari nda Fatu go?  
2. Man Fatu nda Amina go?  
3. Man Amina nda Yakuba go?  
4. Man Yakuba nda Abdu go?  
5. Man Abdu nda Maman go?  
6. Man Maman nda Bakari go?
- B. 1. Where are Bakari and Fatu?  
2. Where are Fatu and Amina?  
3. Where are Amina and Yakuba?  
4. Where are Yakuba and Abdu?  
5. Where are Abdu and Maman?  
6. Where are Maman and Bakari?
- C. 1. A go habo ra.  
2. A go kwara ra.  
3. A go fuwo ra.
- C. 1. He's/She's in the market.  
2. He's/She's in the village.  
3. He's/She's in the house.
- D. 1. I go habo ra.  
2. I go kwara ra.  
3. I go fuwo ra.
- D. 1. They're in the market.  
2. They're in the village.  
3. They're in the house.
- E. 1. Bakari go habo ra.  
2. Fatu go habo ra.  
3. Amina go habo ra.  
4. Yakuba go habo ra.  
5. Abdu go habo ra.  
6. Maman go habo ra.
- E. 1. Bakari is in the market.  
2. Fatu is in the market.  
3. Amina is in the market.  
4. Yakuba is in the market.  
5. Abdu is in the market.  
6. Maman is in the market.

F. 1. Mate ni go?

2. Mate a go?

3. Mate aran go?

4. Mate i go?

G. 1. Mate Bakari go?

2. Mate Fatu go?

3. Mate Amina go?

4. Mate Yakuba go?

5. Mate Abdu go?

6. Mate Maman go?

H. 1. Mate ni sanko go?

2. Mate a sanko go?

3. Mate aran sanko go?

4. Mate i sanko go?

I. 1. Mate ni sanko go?

2. Mate ni baba go?

3. Mate ni nya go?

4. Mate ni arua go?

5. Mate ni woyaa go?

J. 1. Mate aran sanko go?

2. Mate aran baba go?

3. Mate aran nya go?

4. Mate aran arua go?

5. Mate aran woyaa go?

K. 1. Ay go bani sakey.

2. A go bani sakey.

3. Iri go bani sakey.

4. I go bani sakey.

F. 1. How are you?

2. How is he/she?

3. How are you?

4. How are they?

G. 1. How's Bakari?

2. How's Fatu?

3. How's Amina?

4. How's Yakuba?

5. How's Abdu?

6. How's Maman?

H. 1. How's your child?

2. How's his/her child?

3. How's your child?

4. How's their child?

I. 1. How's your child?

2. How's your father?

3. How's your mother?

4. How's your brother?

5. How's your sister?

J. 1. How's your child?

2. How's your father?

3. How's your mother?

4. How's your brother?

5. How's your sister?

K. 1. I'm very well.

2. He's/She's very well.

3. We're very well.

4. They're very well.

- L. 1. Bakari go bani samey.
2. Fatu go bani samey.
3. Amina go bani samey.
4. Yakuba go bani samey.
5. Abdu go bani samey.
6. Maman go bani samey.

- M. 1. Ni ga dya'te?
2. A ga dya'te?
3. Aran ga dya'te?
4. I ga dya'te?

- N. 1. Ni ga dya'te gumo?
2. A ga dya'te gumo?
3. Aran ga dya'te gumo?
4. I ga dya'te gumo?

- O. 1. Ay ga dya'te.
2. A ga dya'te.
3. Iri ga dya'te.
4. I ga dya'te.

- P. 1. Ay si dya'te gumo.
2. A si dya'te gumo.
3. Iri si dya'te gumo.
4. I si dya'te gumo.

- Q. 1. Bakari ga dya'te.
2. Fatu ga dya'te.
3. Amina ga dya'te.
4. Yakuba ga dya'te.
5. Abdu ga dya'te.
6. Maman ga dya'te.

- L. 1. Bakari is very well.
2. Fatu is very well.
3. Amina is very well.
4. Yakuba is very well.
5. Abdu is very well.
6. Maman is very well.

- M. 1. Are you sick?
2. Is he/she sick?
3. Are you sick?
4. Are they sick?

- N. 1. Are you very sick?
2. Is he/she very sick?
3. Are you very sick?
4. Are they very sick?

- O. 1. I'm sick.
2. He's/She's sick.
3. We're sick.
4. They're sick.

- P. 1. I'm not very sick.
2. He's/She's not very sick.
3. We're not very sick.
4. They're not very sick.

- Q. 1. Bakari is sick.
2. Fatu is sick.
3. Amina is sick.
4. Yakuba is sick.
5. Abdu is sick.
6. Maman is sick.

- R. 1. Bakari si dya'te gumo.
2. Fatu si dya'te gumo.
3. Amina si dya'te gumo.
4. Yakuba si dya'te gumo.
5. Abdu si dya'te gumo.
6. Maman si dya'te gumo.

- R. 1. Bakari isn't very sick.
2. Fatu isn't very sick.
3. Amina isn't very sick.
4. Yakuba isn't very sick.
5. Abdu isn't very sick.
6. Maman isn't very sick.

- S. 1. Ni sanko ga dya'te?  
A si dya'te. A go bani samey.

- S. 1. Is your child sick?  
He/She isn't sick. He's/She's very well.

2. Anan baba ga dya'te?  
A si dya'te. A go bani samey.

2. Is your father sick?  
He isn't sick. He's very well.

3. A nyan'o ga dya'te?  
A si dya'te. A go bani samey.

3. Is his/her mother sick?  
She isn't sick. She's very well.

4. I arne ga dya'te?  
A si dya'te. A go bani samey.

4. Is their brother sick?  
He isn't sick. He's very well.

- T. 1. Kwara ga beri?
2. Fumo ga beri?
3. Habo ga beri?
4. Faro ga beri?

- T. 1. Is the village big?
2. Is the house big?
3. Is the market big?
4. Is the field big?

- U. 1. Kwara ga kayna?
2. Fumo ga kayna?
3. Habo ga kayna?
4. Faro ga kayna?

- U. 1. Is the village small?
2. Is the house small?
3. Is the market small?
4. Is the field small?

- V. 1. Kwara ga hanan?
2. Fumo ga hanan?
3. Habo ga hanan?
4. Faro ga hanan?

- V. 1. Is the village clean?
2. Is the house clean?
3. Is the market clean?
4. Is the field clean?

- W. 1. Kwara ga zibi?
2. Fumo ga zibi?
3. Habo ga zibi?
4. Faro ga zibi?

- W. 1. Is the village dirty?
2. Is the house dirty?
3. Is the market dirty?
4. Is the field dirty?

- X. 1. Kwara si beri gumo.
2. Fuwo si beri gumo.
3. Habo si beri gumo.
4. Faro si beri gumo.

- Y. 1. Kwara si kayna gumo.
2. Fuwo si kayna gumo.
3. Habo si kayna gumo.
4. Faro si kayna gumo.

- Z. 1. Kwara si hanan gumo.
2. Fuwo si hanan gumo.
3. Habo si hanan gumo.
4. Faro si hanan gumo.

- AA. 1. Kwara si zibi gumo.
2. Fuwo si zibi gumo.
3. Habo si zibi gumo.
4. Faro si zibi gumo.

- BB. 1. Kwara ga beri?  
Ha'a, a si beri. A ga kayna gumo.
2. Kwara ga kayna?  
Ha'a, a si kayna. A ga beri gumo.
3. Fuwo ga hanan?  
Ha'a, a si hanan. A ga zibi gumo.
4. Fuwo ga zibi?  
Ha'a, a si zibi. A ga hanan gumo.

- X. 1. The village isn't very big.
2. The house isn't very big.
3. The market isn't very big.
4. The field isn't very big.

- Y. 1. The village isn't very small.
2. The house isn't very small.
3. The market isn't very small.
4. The field isn't very small.

- Z. 1. The village isn't very clean.
2. The house isn't very clean.
3. The market isn't very clean.
4. The field isn't very clean.

- AA. 1. The village isn't very dirty.
2. The house isn't very dirty.
3. The market isn't very dirty.
4. The field isn't very dirty.

- BB. 1. Is the village big?  
No, it isn't big. It's very small.
2. Is the village small?  
No, it isn't small. It's very big.
3. Is the house clean?  
No, it isn't clean. It's very dirty.
4. Is the house dirty?  
No, it isn't dirty. It's very clean.

Phonology Drills

A. <u>a</u> <u>ha</u>	B. <u>a</u> <u>ba</u>	C. <u>da</u> <u>da</u>	D. <u>ka</u> <u>ga</u>	E. <u>ha</u> <u>ka</u>	F. <u>ga</u> <u>ha</u>	G. <u>sa</u> <u>za</u>
H. <u>na</u> <u>na</u>	I. <u>ha</u> <u>ha'</u>	J. <u>ha'</u> <u>nan</u>	K. <u>man</u> <u>nan</u>	L. <u>ban</u> <u>nan</u>	M. <u>na</u> <u>nya</u>	N. <u>kar</u> <u>sar</u>
O. <u>hal</u> <u>han</u>	P. <u>Afrik</u> <u>Ali</u>	Q. <u>Ali</u> <u>Albay</u>	R. <u>Albay</u> <u>aran</u>	S. <u>babay</u> <u>bani</u>	T. <u>taba</u> <u>tata</u>	U. <u>tali</u> <u>talka</u>
	V. <u>tali</u> <u>tare</u>	W. <u>tare</u> <u>darey</u>	X. <u>darey</u> <u>daley</u>	Y. <u>dabu</u> <u>dama</u>	Z. <u>dama</u> <u>dara</u>	

UNIT 10

Dialogue 1

go'da

wa'de

A: Abdu go'da wa'de?

B: Oho, a go'da wa'de.

A: May no?

B: Fatu no.

A: I go'da zanka?

B: Oho, i go'da zanka. A na Yakuba.

A: A go'da bani?

si'da

B: Ha'a, a si'da bani. A ga dya'te.

to have

wife (indef.)

A: Does Abdu have a wife?

B: Yes, he has a wife.

A: Who is it?

B: It's Fatu.

A: Do they have a child?

B: Yes, they have a child. His name is Yakuba.

A: Is he well?

to not have

B: No, he isn't well. He's sick.

Dialogue 2

A: Ni go'da wa'de?

B: Oho, ay go'da wa'de.

A: Ni go'da zanka?

B: Ha'a, ay si'da zanka.

A: Man ni wa'de go?

A: Do you have a wife?

B: Yes, I have a wife.

A: Do you have a child?

B: No, I don't have a child.

A: Where is your wife?

B: A ga kwara ra.

fu

A: Ni go'da fu berif?

B: Ha'a, a ga kayna.

B: She's in the village.

house (indef.)

A: Do you have a big house?

B: No, it's small.

### Dialogue 3

A: Maman go'da fu berif?

B: Ha'a, a go'da fu kayna.

bori

A: A ga bori?

B: Ha'a, a ga zibi.

A: Does Maman have a big house?

B: No, he has a small house.

pretty, good (indef. sg.)

A: Is it pretty?

B: No, it's dirty.

### Dialogue 4

A: Aran kwara ga bori?

B: Oho. A ga bori. A si zibi.

A: Is your village pretty?

B: Yes. It's pretty. It isn't dirty.

### Note on the Dialogues

1. In expressions which are distinctly indefinite in meaning, both the noun and its adjective take the indefinite form.

### Structural Drills

1. Ni go'da zanka?
2. Ni go'da wa'de?
3. Ni go'da arame?
4. Ni go'da woyme?

1. Do you have a child?
2. Do you have a wife?
3. Do you have a brother?
4. Do you have a sister?

- B. 1. Aran go'da zanka?  
2. Aran go'da arame?  
3. Aran go'da woyme?

- C. 1. A go'da zanka?  
2. A go'da wa'de?  
3. A go'da arame?  
4. A go'da woyme?

- B. 1. I go'da zanka?  
2. I go'da arame?  
3. I go'da woyme?

- E. 1. Abdu go'da wa'de?  
2. Maman go'da wa'de?  
3. Bakari go'da wa'de?  
4. Yakuba go'da wa'de?

- F. 1. Abdu go'da zanka?  
2. Maman go'da zanka?  
3. Bakari go'da zanka?  
4. Yakuba go'da zanka?  
5. Amina go'da zanka?  
6. Fatu go'da zanka?

- G. 1. Ay go'da wa'de.  
2. Ay go'da zanka.  
3. Ay go'da arame.  
4. Ay go'da woyme.

- H. 1. Iri go'da zanka.  
2. Iri go'da arame.  
3. Iri go'da woyme.

- B. 1. Do you have a child?  
2. Do you have a brother?  
3. Do you have a sister?

- C. 1. Does he/she have a child?  
2. Does he have a wife?  
3. Does she have a brother?  
4. Does he have a sister?

- D. 1. Do they have a child?  
2. Do they have a Brother?  
3. Do they have a sister?

- E. 1. Does Abdu have a wife?  
2. Does Maman have a wife?  
3. Does Bakari have a wife?  
4. Does Yakuba have a wife?

- F. 1. Does Abdu have a child?  
2. Does Maman have a child?  
3. Does Bakari have a child?  
4. Does Yakuba have a child?  
5. Does Amina have a child?  
6. Does Fatu have a child?

- G. 1. I have a wife.  
2. I have a child.  
3. I have a brother.  
4. I have a sister.

- H. 1. We have a child.  
2. We have a brother.  
3. We have a sister.

- I. 1. A go'da wa'de.  
2. A go'da sanka.  
3. A go'da arame.  
4. A go'da woyme.

- J. 1. I go'da sanka.  
2. I go'da arame.  
3. I go'da woyme.

- K. 1. Ay si'da wa'de.  
2. Ay si'da sanka.  
3. Ay si'da arame.  
4. Ay si'da woyme.

- L. 1. Iri si'da sanka.  
2. Iri si'da arame.  
3. Iri si'da woyme.

- M. 1. A si'da wa'de.  
2. A si'da sanka.  
3. A si'da arame.  
4. A si'da woyme.

- N. 1. I si'da sanka.  
2. I si'da arame.  
3. I si'da woyme.

- O. 1. Abdu go'da wa'de.  
2. Maman go'da wa'de.  
3. Bakari go'da wa'de.  
4. Yakuba go'da wa'de.

- I. 1. He has a wife.  
2. He/She has a child.  
3. She has a brother.  
4. He has a sister.

- J. 1. They have a child.  
2. They have a brother.  
3. They have a sister.

- K. 1. I don't have a wife.  
2. I don't have a child.  
3. I don't have a brother.  
4. I don't have a sister.

- L. 1. We don't have a child.  
2. We don't have a brother.  
3. We don't have a sister.

- M. 1. He doesn't have a wife.  
2. He/She doesn't have a child.  
3. She doesn't have a brother.  
4. He doesn't have a sister.

- N. 1. They don't have a child.  
2. They don't have a brother.  
3. They don't have a sister.

- O. 1. Abdu has a wife.  
2. Maman has a wife.  
3. Bakari has a wife.  
4. Yakuba has a wife.

- P. 1. Abdu go'da zanka.  
 2. Maman go'da zanka.  
 3. Bakari go'da zanka.  
 4. Yakuba go'da zanka.  
 5. Amina go'da zanka.  
 6. Fatu go'da zanka.

- Q. 1. Abdu si'da wa'de.  
 2. Maman si'da wa'de.  
 3. Bakari si'da wa'de.  
 4. Yakuba si'da wa'de.

- R. 1. Abdu si'da zanka.  
 2. Maman si'da zanka.  
 3. Bakari si'da zanka.  
 4. Yakuba si'da zanka.  
 5. Amina si'da zanka.  
 6. Fatu si'da zanka.

- S. 1. Ni go'da bani?  
 2. A go'da bani?  
 3. Aran go'da bani?  
 4. I go'da bani?

- T. 1. Abdu go'da bani?  
 2. Maman go'da bani?  
 3. Bakari go'da bani?  
 4. Yakuba go'da bani?  
 5. Amina go'da bani?  
 6. Fatu go'da bani?

- U. 1. Ay go'da bani.  
 2. A go'da bani.  
 3. Iri go'da bani.  
 4. I go'da bani.

- P. 1. Abdu has a child.  
 2. Maman has a child.  
 3. Bakari has a child.  
 4. Yakuba has a child.  
 5. Amina has a child.  
 6. Fatu has a child.

- Q. 1. Abdu doesn't have a wife.  
 2. Maman doesn't have a wife.  
 3. Bakari doesn't have a wife.  
 4. Yakuba doesn't have a wife.

- R. 1. Abdu doesn't have a child.  
 2. Maman doesn't have a child.  
 3. Bakari doesn't have a child.  
 4. Yakuba doesn't have a child.  
 5. Amina doesn't have a child.  
 6. Fatu doesn't have a child.

- S. 1. How are you?  
 2. How is he/she?  
 3. How are you?  
 4. How are they?

- T. 1. How is Abdu?  
 2. How is Maman?  
 3. How is Bakari?  
 4. How is Yakuba?  
 5. How is Amina?  
 6. How is Fatu?

- U. 1. I'm well.  
 2. He's/She's well.  
 3. We're well.  
 4. They're well.

- V. 1. Ay si'da bani.  
 2. A si'da bani.  
 3. Iri si'da bani.  
 4. I si'da bani.

- W. 1. Abdu go'da bani.  
 2. Maman go'da bani.  
 3. Bakari go'da bani.  
 4. Yakuba go'da bani.  
 5. Amina go'da bani.  
 6. Fatu go'da bani.

- X. 1. Abdu si'da bani.  
 2. Maman si'da bani.  
 3. Bakari si'da bani.  
 4. Yakuba si'da bani.  
 5. Amina si'da bani.  
 6. Fatu si'da bani.

- Y. 1. Ni go'da fu beri?  
 2. A go'da fu beri?  
 3. Aran go'da fu beri?  
 4. I go'da fu beri?

Z. 1. Ni go'da fu beri?  
 Ha'a, ay si'da fu beri. Ay  
 go'da fu kayna.

2. Aran go'da fari kayna?  
 Ha'a, iri si'da fari kayna.  
 Iri go'da fari beri.

3. A go'da fu kayna?  
 Ha'a, a si'da fu kayna. A  
 go'da fu beri.

4. I go'da fari beri?  
 Ha'a, i si'da fari beri. I  
 go'da fari kayna.

- V. 1. I'm not well.  
 2. He's/She's not well.  
 3. We're not well.  
 4. They're not well.

- W. 1. Abdu is well.  
 2. Maman is well.  
 3. Bakari is well.  
 4. Yakuba is well.  
 5. Amina is well.  
 6. Fatu is well.

- X. 1. Abdu isn't well.  
 2. Maman isn't well.  
 3. Bakari isn't well.  
 4. Yakuba isn't well.  
 5. Amina isn't well.  
 6. Fatu isn't well.

- Y. 1. Do you have a big house?  
 2. Does he/she have a big house?  
 3. Do you have a big house?  
 4. Do they have a big house?

Z. 1. Do you have a big house?  
 No, I don't have a big house. I  
 have a small house.

2. Do you have a small field?  
 No, we don't have a small field.  
 We have a big field.

3. Does he/she have a small house?  
 No, he/she doesn't have a small  
 house. He/She has a big house.

4. Do they have a big field?  
 No, they don't have a big field.  
 They have a small field.

- AA. 1. Ni kwara ga bori?  
Oho, a ga bori. A si zibi.
2. Aran kwara ga bori?  
Ha'a, a si bori. A ga zibi.
3. A kwara ga bori?  
Oho, a ga bori. A si zibi.
4. I kwara ga bori?  
Ha'a, a si bori. A ga zibi.

- AA. 1. Is your village pretty?  
Yes, it's pretty. It isn't dirty.
2. Is your village pretty?  
No, it isn't pretty. It's dirty.
3. Is his/her village pretty?  
Yes, it's pretty. It isn't dirty.
4. Is their village pretty?  
No, it isn't pretty. It's dirty.

Phonology Drills

- |                  |                  |                  |                   |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| A. <u>k</u> ala  | B. <u>g</u> adi  | C. <u>g</u> adi  | D. <u>k</u> warey | E. <u>s</u> adyi | F. <u>s</u> afun |
| <u>k</u> ani     | <u>g</u> ayi     | <u>g</u> ani     | <u>k</u> wara     | <u>s</u> adyaw   | <u>s</u> artyey  |
| G. <u>s</u> afun | H. <u>d</u> yabi | I. <u>f</u> aba  | J. <u>f</u> ata   | K. <u>m</u> ate  | L. <u>m</u> arga |
| <u>s</u> ama     | <u>d</u> yara    | <u>f</u> ata     | <u>f</u> arka     | <u>m</u> arga    | <u>m</u> argu    |
| M. <u>d</u> yabi | N. <u>h</u> abey | O. <u>h</u> abey | P. <u>h</u> anan  | Q. <u>h</u> ari  | R. <u>h</u> are  |
| <u>d</u> yase    | <u>h</u> abu     | <u>h</u> aggoy   | <u>h</u> anno     | <u>h</u> are     | <u>h</u> ala     |
| S. <u>l</u> abo  | T. <u>l</u> abo  | U. <u>w</u> ate  | V. <u>w</u> asi   | W. <u>Y</u> aye  |                  |
| <u>l</u> abu     | <u>r</u> abi     | <u>w</u> ansy    | <u>w</u> asu      | <u>y</u> ara     |                  |

UNIT 11

Dialogue 1

fo  
ga ti

which, what  
(signals equivalence between  
expressions)

A: Fu fo ga ti ni wone?

A: Which house is yours?

wone<sup>1</sup>

this one here/that one there

B: Wone ga ti ay wone.

B: That's (This is) mine.

zankey<sup>2</sup>  
ne<sup>3</sup>

children (def./indef.)  
it is/here is/there is/they  
are/here are/there are

A: Ni zankey ne?<sup>1</sup>

A: Are those (these) children yours?

B: Ha'a, Amina zankey no.  
ya'

B: No, they're Amina's children.

(signals the indefinite  
plural)

woney

(signals possession in the  
plural)

Wone ya' ga ti ay woney.

These (those) are mine.

Dialogue 2

A: Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?

A: Which houses are yours?

B: Wone ya' ga ti iri woney?

B: Those (These) are ours.

A: Aran zankey ne?<sup>1</sup>

A: Are those (these) children yours?

B: Ha'a, Fatu nda Bakari zankey  
no. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.

B: No, they're Fatu and Bakari's  
children. These (Those) are ours.

Dialogue 3

A: Kwara fo ga ti Abdu wone?

A: Which village is Abdu's?

B: Wone ga ti a wone.

B: That's (This is) his.

farey<sup>2</sup>

fields (def.)

A: A farey ne?<sup>1</sup>

A: Are those (these) fields his?

B: Ha'a, Maman farey no. Wone  
ya' ga ti Abdu woney.

B: No, they're Maman's fields. These  
(Those) are Abdu's.

Dialogue 4

A: Kwara fo ya' ga ti Bakari nda  
Yakuba woney?

A: Which villages are Bakari and  
Yakuba's?

B: Wone ya' ga ti i woney.

B: Those (These) are theirs.

A: I farey ne?<sup>1</sup>

A: Are those (these) fields  
theirs?

B: Ha'a, Abdu nda Maman farey no.  
Wone ya' ga ti Bakari nda  
Yakuba woney.

B: No, they're Abdu and Maman's  
fields. These (Those) are  
Bakari and Yakuba's.

Dialogue 5

A: Ni, zanka ne?<sup>1</sup>

A: Is that (this) your child?

B: Ha'a, Fatu zanka no. Wone ga  
ti ay wone.

B: No, it's Fatu's child. This (That)  
is mine.

Dialogue 6

nwo

A: Ni zanka no nwo?

B: Ha'a, Amina zanka no.

yo'go

wono

Yo'go wono ga ti ay wone.

right here

A: Is this one right here your child?

B: No, it's Amina's child.

right over there, yonder

this/that one

That one right over there is mine.

Dialogue 7

habey

A: Aran habey no nwo?

B: Ha'a, Maman nda Yakuba habey

no.

woney

Yo'go woney ga ti iri woney.

markets (def.)

A: Are these right here your markets?

B: No, they're Maman and Yakuba's

markets.

these/those ones

Those right over there are ours.

Dialogue 8

fuwey

A: Bakari fuwey no nwo?

B: Ha'a, Maman fuwey no. Yo'go

woney ga ti Bakari woney.

houses (def.)

A: Are these right here Bakari's houses?

B: No, they're Maman's houses. Those

right over there are Bakari's.

Dialogue 9

A: Abdu nda Bakari kwarey no  
nwo?

B: Ha'a, Yakuba nda Maman kwarey

no. Yo'go woney ga ti Abdu

nda Bakari woney.

A: Are these right here Abdu and  
Bakari's villages?

B: No, they're Yakuba and Maman's

villages. Those right over there

are Abdu and Bakari's.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. In Djerma, the distinction between "this" and "that" and between "these" and "those" is often made by gesture. In situations demanding precision, newo and yo'go are used.
2. As indicated in a previous unit, nouns and adjectives have definite and indefinite forms in the plural as well as the singular. These are definite forms.
3. Used in place of no in some Present structures, especially when the object is clearly visible.
4. Wono, a less definite form of wone, is used when location is denoted by an adverb. Woney is the plural form of wono.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Fu fo ga ti ni wone?  
2. Fu fo ga ti aran wone?  
3. Fu fo ga ti a wone?  
4. Fu fo ga ti i wone?

- A. 1. Which house is yours?  
2. Which house is yours?  
3. Which house is his/hers?  
4. Which house is theirs?

- B. 1. Fu fo ya' ga ti ni woney?  
2. Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?  
3. Fu fo ya' ga ti a woney?  
4. Fu fo ya' ga ti i woney?

- B. 1. Which houses are yours?  
2. Which houses are yours?  
3. Which houses are his/hers?  
4. Which houses are theirs?

- C. 1. Fu fo ga ti Abdu wone?  
2. Fu fo ga ti Fatu wone?  
3. Fu fo ga ti Bakari wone?  
4. Fu fo ga ti Maman wone?  
5. Fu fo ga ti Amina wone?  
6. Fu fo ga ti Yakuba wone?

- C. 1. Which house is Abdu's?  
2. Which house is Fatu's?  
3. Which house is Bakari's?  
4. Which house is Maman's?  
5. Which house is Amina's?  
6. Which house is Yakuba's?

- D. 1. Fu fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Fatu woney?  
2. Fu fo ya' ga ti Fatu nda  
Bakari woney?

- D. 1. Which houses are Abdu and  
Fatu's?  
2. Which houses are Fatu and  
Bakari's?

3. Fu fo ya' ga ti Bakari nda  
Maman woney?

4. Fu fo ya' ga ti Maman nda  
Amina woney?

5. Fu fo ya' ga ti Amina nda  
Yakuba woney?

6. Fu fo ya' ga ti Yakuba nda  
Abdu woney?

E. 1. Kwara fo ga ti ni wone?

2. Kwara fo ga ti aran wone?

3. Kwara fo ga ti a wone?

4. Kwara fo ga ti i wone?

F. 1. Kwara fo ya' ga ti ni woney?

2. Kwara fo ya' ga ti aran woney?

3. Kwara fo ya' ga ti a woney?

4. Kwara fo ya' ga ti i woney?

G. 1. Kwara fo ga ti Abdu wone?

2. Kwara fo ga ti Fatu wone?

3. Kwara fo ga ti Bakari wone?

4. Kwara fo ga ti Maman wone?

5. Kwara fo ga ti Amina wone?

6. Kwara fo ga ti Yakuba wone?

H. 1. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Fatu woney?

2. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Fatu nda  
Bakari woney?

3. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Bakari  
nda Maman woney?

4. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Maman nda  
Amina woney?

3. Which houses are Bakari and  
Maman's?

4. Which houses are Maman and  
Amina's?

5. Which houses are Amina and  
Yakuba's?

6. Which houses are Yakuba and  
Abdu's?

E. 1. Which village is yours?

2. Which village is yours?

3. Which village is his/hers?

4. Which village is theirs?

F. 1. Which villages are yours?

2. Which villages are yours?

3. Which villages are his/hers?

4. Which villages are theirs?

G. 1. Which village is Abdu's?

2. Which village is Fatu's?

3. Which village is Bakari's?

4. Which village is Maman's?

5. Which village is Amina's?

6. Which village is Yakuba's?

H. 1. Which villages are Abdu and  
Fatu's?

2. Which villages are Fatu and  
Bakari's?

3. Which villages are Bakari and  
Maman's?

4. Which villages are Maman and  
Amina's?

5. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Amina  
nda Yakuba woney?

6. Kwara fo ya' ga ti Yakuba  
nda Abdu woney?

- I. 1. Wone ga ti ay wone.  
2. Wone ga ti iri wone.  
3. Wone ga ti a wone.  
4. Wone ga ti i wone.

- J. 1. Wone ya' ga ti ay woney.  
2. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.  
3. Wone ya' ga ti a woney.  
4. Wone ya' ga ti i woney.

- K. 1. Wone ga ti Abdu wone.  
2. Wone ga ti Fatu wone.  
3. Wone ga ti Bakari wone.  
4. Wone ga ti Maman wone.  
5. Wone ga ti Amina wone.  
6. Wone ga ti Yakuba wone.

- L. 1. Wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Fatu woney.  
2. Wone ya' ga ti Fatu nda  
Bakari woney.  
3. Wone ya' ga ti Bakari nda  
Maman woney.  
4. Wone ya' ga ti Maman nda  
Amina woney.  
5. Wone ya' ga ti Amina nda  
Yakuba woney.  
6. Wone ya' ga ti Yakuba nda  
Abdu woney.

5. Which villages are Amina  
and Yakuba's?

6. Which villages are Yakuba  
and Abdu's?

- I. 1. That/This is mine.  
2. That/This is ours.  
3. That/This is his/hers.  
4. That/This is theirs.

- J. 1. Those/These are mine.  
2. Those/These are ours.  
3. Those/These are his/hers.  
4. Those/These are theirs.

- K. 1. That/This is Abdu's.  
2. That/This is Fatu's.  
3. That/This is Bakari's.  
4. That/This is Maman's.  
5. That/This is Amina's.  
6. That/This is Yakuba's.

- L. 1. Those/These are Abdu and  
Fatu's.  
2. Those/These are Fatu and  
Bakari's.  
3. Those/These are Bakari and  
Maman's.  
4. Those/These are Maman and  
Amina's.  
5. Those/These are Amina and  
Yakuba's.  
6. Those/These are Yakuba and  
Abdu's.

- M. 1. Ni zanka ne?
2. Aran zanka ne?
3. A zanka ne?
4. I zanka ne?

- N. 1. Ni zankey ne?
2. Aran zankey ne?
3. A zankey ne?
4. I zankey ne?

- O. 1. Ni faro ne?
2. Aran faro ne?
3. A faro ne?
4. I faro ne?

- P. 1. Ni farey ne?
2. Aran farey ne?
3. A farey ne?
4. I farey ne?

- Q. 1. Ni habo ne?
2. Aran habo ne?
3. A habo ne?
4. I habo ne?

- R. 1. Ni habey ne?
2. Aran habey ne?
3. A habey ne?
4. I habey ne?

- S. 1. Ni zanka no newo?
2. Aran zanka no newo?
3. A zanka no newo?
4. I zanka no newo?

- M. 1. Is this/that your child?
2. Is this/that your child?
3. Is this/that his/her child?
4. Is this/that their child?

- N. 1. Are these/those your children?
2. Are these/those your children?
3. Are these/those his/her children?
4. Are these/those their children?

- O. 1. Is this/that your field?
2. Is this/that your field?
3. Is this/that his/her field?
4. Is this/that their field?

- P. 1. Are these/those your fields?
2. Are these/those your fields?
3. Are these/those his/her fields?
4. Are these/those their fields?

- Q. 1. Is this/that your market?
2. Is this/that your market?
3. Is this/that his/her market?
4. Is this/that their market?

- R. 1. Are these/those your markets?
2. Are these/those your markets?
3. Are these/those his/her markets?
4. Are these/those their markets?

- S. 1. Is this one right here your child?
2. Is this one right here your child?
3. Is this one right here his/her child?
4. Is this one right here their child?

T. 1. Ni zankey no newo?

2. Aran zankey no newo?

3. A zankey no newo?

4. I zankey no newo?

U. 1. Ni fuwo no newo?

2. Aran fuwo no newo?

3. A fuwo no newo?

4. I fuwo no newo?

V. 1. Ni fuwey no newo?

2. Aran fuwey no newo?

3. A fuwey no newo?

4. I fuwey no newo?

W. 1. Ni kwara no newo?

2. Aran kwara no newo?

3. A kwara no newo?

4. I kwara no newo?

X. 1. Ni kwarey no newo?

2. Aran kwarey no newo?

3. A kwarey no newo?

4. I kwarey no newo?

Y. 1. Yo'go wono ga ti ay wone.

2. Yo'go wono ga ti iri wone.

3. Yo'go wono ga ti a wone.

4. Yo'go wono ga ti i wone.

T. 1. Are these right here your children?

2. Are these right here your children?

3. Are these right here his/her children?

4. Are these right here their children?

U. 1. Is this one right here your house?

2. Is this one right here your house?

3. Is this one right here his/her house?

4. Is this one right here their house?

V. 1. Are these right here your houses?

2. Are these right here your houses?

3. Are these right here his/her houses?

4. Are these right here their houses?

W. 1. Is this one right here your village?

2. Is this one right here your village?

3. Is this one right here his/her village?

4. Is this one right here their village?

X. 1. Are these right here your villages?

2. Are these right here your villages?

3. Are these right here his/her villages?

4. Are these right here their villages.

Y. 1. That one right over there is mine.

2. That one right over there is ours.

3. That one right over there is his/hers.

4. That one right over there is theirs.

2. 1. Yo'go woney ga ti ay woney.
2. Yo'go woney ga ti iri woney.
3. Yo'go woney ga ti a woney.
4. Yo'go woney ga ti i woney.

2. 1. Those right over there are mine.
2. Those right over there are ours.
3. Those right over there are his/hers.
4. Those right over there are theirs.

- AA. 1. Yo'go wono ga ti Abdu wone.
2. Yo'go wono ga ti Fatu wone.
3. Yo'go wono ga ti Bakari wone.
4. Yo'go wono ga ti Maman wone.
5. Yo'go wono ga ti Amina wone.
6. Yo'go wono ga ti Yakuba wone.

- AA. 1. That one right over there is Abdu's.
2. That one right over there is Fatu's.
3. That one right over there is Bakari's.
4. That one right over there is Maman's.
5. That one right over there is Amina's.
6. That one right over there is Yakuba's.

- BB. 1. Yo'go woney ga ti Abdu woney.
2. Yo'go woney ga ti Fatu woney.
3. Yo'go woney ga ti Bakari woney.
4. Yo'go woney ga ti Maman woney.
5. Yo'go woney ga ti Amina woney.
6. Yo'go woney ga ti Yakuba woney.

- BB. 1. Those right over there are Abdu's.
2. Those right over there are Fatu's.
3. Those right over there are Bakari's.
4. Those right over there are Maman's.
5. Those right over there are Amina's.
6. Those right over there are Yakuba's.



Phonology Drills

A. i  
hin

B. ti  
tin

C. bita  
bi'di

D. tyiri  
tyi'di

E. tyiri  
dyiri

F. dyiri  
Dyi'go

G. hina  
hi'za

H. se  
sey

I. zen  
zey

J. tyew  
dyew

K. tye  
tyen

L. waney  
kan'ey

M. dyedyey  
dye'di

N. ba  
ban

O. ba  
bay

P. ya  
ya'

Q. ya  
yaw

R. ya'  
yaw

S. naru  
n'waro

T. tyiraw  
diraw

U. bo  
bo'

V. ko  
koy

W. go  
goy

X. tonton  
donten

Y. womo  
zom'e

Z. ta  
tun

AA. fu  
fua

BB. woy  
wuy

UNIT 12

Dialogue 1

A: Kwara fo ga ti ni wone?

A: Which village is yours?

B: Kwara wone ga ti ay wone.

B: This village is mine.

wofe

which one, what one

A: Wofe'ga ti Bakari wone?

A: Which one is Bakari's?

wedin

that one (near by)

B: Wedin ga ti a wone.

B: That one is his.

Dialogue 2

A: Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?

A: Which houses are yours?

B: Fu wedin ya' ga ti iri woney.

B: Those houses are ours.

A: Wofe ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
woney?

A: Which ones are Abdu and Maman's?

whe'di

that one (middle distance)

B: Whe'di ya' ga ti i woney.

B: Those are theirs.

Dialogue 3

A: Fari fo ga ti Bakari wone?

A: Which field is Bakari's?

B: Fari whe'di ga ti a wone.

B: That field is his.

A: Wofe ga ti ni wone?

A: Which one is yours?

weyongo

that one (far away)

B: Weyongo ga ti ay wone.

B: That one is mine.

### Dialogue 4

A: Zanka fo ya' ga 'ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney?

A: Which children are Abdu and  
Maman's?

B: Zanka woyongo ya' ga ti i  
woney.

B: These children are theirs.

A: Wofe ya' ga ti aran woney?

A: Which ones are yours?

B: Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.

B: These are ours.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Kwara fo ga ti ni wone?  
2. Kwara fo ga ti aran wone?  
3. Kwara fo ga ti a wone?  
4. Kwara fo ga ti i wone?  
5. Kwara fo ga ti Bakari wone?  
6. Kwara fo ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
wone?

- B. 1. Fu fo ya' ga ti aran woney?  
2. Fu fo ya' ga ti i woney?  
3. Fu fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
woney?

- C. 1. Wofe ga ti ni wone?  
2. Wofe ga ti aran wone?  
3. Wofe ga ti a wone?  
4. Wofe ga ti i wone?  
5. Wofe ga ti Bakari wone?  
6. Wofe ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
wone?

- A. 1. Which village is yours?  
2. Which village is yours?  
3. Which village is his/hers?  
4. Which village is theirs?  
5. Which village is Bakari's?  
6. Which village is Abdu and  
Maman's?

- B. 1. Which houses are yours?  
2. Which houses are theirs?  
3. Which houses are Abdu and  
Maman's?

- C. 1. Which one is yours?  
2. Which one is yours?  
3. Which one is his/hers?  
4. Which one is theirs?  
5. Which one is Bakari's?  
6. Which one is Abdu and  
Maman's?

- D. 1. Wofe ya' ga ti aran woney?  
 2. Wofe ya' ga ti i woney?  
 3. Wofe ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?

- E. 1. Zanka fo ga ti aran wone?  
 2. Wofe ga ti aran wone?  
 3. Zanka fo ya' ga ti aran woney?  
 4. Wofe ya' ga ti aran woney?

- F. 1. Fari fo ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone?  
 2. Wofe ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone?  
 3. Fari fo ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?  
 4. Wofe ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney?

- G. 1. Kwara wone ga ti ay wone.  
 2. Kwara wone ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Kwara wone ga ti a wone.  
 4. Kwara wone ga ti i wone.  
 5. Kwara wone ga ti Bakari wone.  
 6. Kwara wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.

- H. 1. Fu wone ya' ga ti iri woney.  
 2. Fu wone ya' ga ti i woney.  
 3. Fu wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.

- I. 1. Wone ga ti ay wone.  
 2. Wone ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Wone ga ti a wone.

- D. 1. Which ones are yours?  
 2. Which ones are theirs?  
 3. Which ones are Abdu and Maman's?

- E. 1. Which child is yours?  
 2. Which one is yours?  
 3. Which children are yours?  
 4. Which ones are yours?

- F. 1. Which field is Abdu and Maman's?  
 2. Which one is Abdu and Maman's?  
 3. Which fields are Abdu and Maman's?  
 4. Which ones are Abdu and Maman's?

- G. 1. This village is mine.  
 2. This village is ours.  
 3. This village is his/hers.  
 4. This village is theirs.  
 5. This village is Bakari's.  
 6. This village is Abdu and Maman's.

- H. 1. These houses are ours.  
 2. These houses are theirs.  
 3. These houses are Abdu and Maman's.

- I. 1. This one is mine.  
 2. This one is ours.  
 3. This one is his/hers.

4. Wone ga ti i wone.
5. Wone ga ti Bakari wone.
6. Wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.

4. This one is theirs.
5. This one is Bakari's.
6. This one is Abdu and Maman's.

- J. 1. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.
2. Wone ya' ga ti i woney.
3. Wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.

- J. 1. These are ours.
2. These are theirs.
3. These are Abdu and Maman's.

- K. 1. Zanka wone ga ti iri wone.
2. Wone ga ti iri wone.
3. Zanka wone ya' ga ti iri woney.
4. Wone ya' ga ti iri woney.

- K. 1. This child is ours.
2. This one is ours.
3. These children are ours.
4. These are ours.

- L. 1. Fari wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.
2. Wone ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.
3. Fari wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.
4. Wone ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.

- L. 1. This field is Abdu and Maman's.
2. This one is Abdu and Maman's.
3. These fields are Abdu and Maman's.
4. These are Abdu and Maman's.

- M. 1. Kwara wodin ga ti ay wone.
2. Kwara wodin ga ti iri wone.
3. Kwara wodin ga ti a wone.
4. Kwara wodin ga ti i wone.
5. Kwara wodin ga ti Bakari wone.
6. Kwara wodin ga ti Abdu nda Maman wone.

- M. 1. That village is mine.
2. That village is ours.
3. That village is his/hers.
4. That village is theirs.
5. That village is Bakari's.
6. That village is Abdu and Maman's.

- N. 1. Fu wodin ya' ga ti iri woney.
2. Fu wodin ya' ga ti i woney.
3. Fu wodin ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman woney.

- N. 1. Those houses are ours.
2. Those houses are theirs.
3. Those houses are Abdu and Maman's.

- O. 1. Wedin ga ti ay wone.  
 2. Wedin ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Wedin ga ti a wone.  
 4. Wedin ga ti i wone.  
 5. Wedin ga ti Bakari wone.  
 6. Wedin ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
wone.

- P. 1. Wedin ya' ga ti iri woney.  
 2. Wedin ya' ga ti i woney.  
 3. Wedin ya' ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
woney.

- Q. 1. Zanka wedin ga ti iri wone.  
 2. Wedin ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Zanka wedin ya' ga ti iri woney.  
 4. Wedin ya' ga ti iri woney.

- R. 1. Fari wedin ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman wone.  
 2. Wedin ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman wone.  
 3. Fari wedin ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.  
 4. Wedin ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.

- S. 1. Kwara whe'di ga ti ay wone.  
 2. Kwara whe'di ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Kwara whe'di ga ti a wone.  
 4. Kwara whe'di ga ti i wone.  
 5. Kwara whe'di ga ti Bakari wone.  
 6. Kwara whe'di ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman wone.

- O. 1. That one is mine.  
 2. That one is ours.  
 3. That one is his/hers.  
 4. That one is theirs.  
 5. That one is Bakari's.  
 6. That one is Abdu and Maman's.

- P. 1. Those are ours.  
 2. Those are theirs.  
 3. Those are Abdu and Maman's.

- Q. 1. That child is ours.  
 2. That one is ours.  
 3. These children are ours.  
 4. These are ours.

- R. 1. That field is Abdu and Maman's.  
 2. That one is Abdu and Maman's.  
 3. Those fields are Abdu and  
 Maman's.  
 4. These are Abdu and Maman's.

- S. 1. That village is mine.  
 2. That village is ours.  
 3. That village is his/hers.  
 4. That village is theirs.  
 5. That village is Bakari's.  
 6. That village is Abdu and  
 Maman's.

- T. 1. Fu wohe'di ya' ga ti iri woney.  
 2. Fu wohe'di ya' ga ti i woney.  
 3. Fu wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.

- U. 1. Wohe'di ga ti ay wone.  
 2. Wohe'di ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Wohe'di ga ti a wone.  
 4. Wohe'di ga ti i wone.  
 5. Wohe'di ga ti Bakari wone.  
 6. Wohe'di ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
 wone.

- V. 1. Wohe'di ya' ga ti iri woney.  
 2. Wohe'di ya' ga ti i woney.  
 3. Wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.

- W. 1. Zanka wohe'di ga ti iri  
wone.  
 2. Wohe'di ga ti iri  
wone.  
 3. Zanka wohe'di ya' ga ti iri  
woney.  
 4. Wohe'di ya' ga ti iri  
woney.

- X. 1. Fari wohe'di ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman wone.  
 2. Wohe'di ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman wone.  
 3. Fari wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.  
 4. Wohe'di ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.

- T. 1. Those houses are ours.  
 2. Those houses are theirs.  
 3. Those houses are Abdu and  
 Maman's.

- U. 1. That one is mine.  
 2. That one is ours.  
 3. That one is his/hers.  
 4. That one is theirs.  
 5. That one is Bakari's.  
 6. That one is Abdu and Maman's.

- V. 1. Those are ours.  
 2. Those are theirs.  
 3. Those are Abdu and Maman's.

- W. 1. That child is ours.  
 2. That one is ours.  
 3. Those children are ours.  
 4. These are ours.

- X. 1. That field is Abdu and  
 Maman's.  
 2. That one is Abdu and Maman's.  
 3. Those fields are Abdu and  
 Maman's.  
 4. Those are Abdu and Maman's.

- Y. 1. Kwara woyongo ga ti ay wone.  
 2. Kwara woyongo ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Kwara woyongo ga ti a wone.  
 4. Kwara woyongo ga ti i wone.  
 5. Kwara woyongo ga ti Bakari wone.  
 6. Kwara woyongo ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman wone.

- Z. 1. Fu woyongo ya' ga ti iri woney.  
 2. Fu woyongo ya' ga ti i woney.  
 3. Fu woyongo ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.

- AA. 1. Woyongo ga ti ay wone.  
 2. Woyongo ga ti iri wone.  
 3. Woyongo ga ti a wone.  
 4. Woyongo ga ti i wone.  
 5. Woyongo ga ti Bakari wone.  
 6. Woyongo ga ti Abdu nda Maman  
 wone.

- BB. 1. Woyongo ya' ga ti iri woney.  
 2. Woyongo ya' ga ti i woney.  
 3. Woyongo ya' ga ti Abdu nda  
Maman woney.

- CC. 1. Zanka woyongo ga ti iri  
 wone.  
 2. Woyongo ga ti iri  
 wone.  
 3. Zanka woyongo ya' ga ti iri  
 woney.  
 4. Woyongo ya' ga ti iri  
 woney.

- Y. 1. That village is mine.  
 2. That village is ours.  
 3. That village is his/hers.  
 4. That village is theirs.  
 5. That village is Bakari's.  
 6. That village is Abdu and  
 Maman's.

- Z. 1. Those houses are ours.  
 2. Those houses are theirs.  
 3. Those houses are Abdu and  
 Maman's.

- AA. 1. That one is mine.  
 2. That one is ours.  
 3. That one is his/hers.  
 4. That one is theirs.  
 5. That one is Bakari's.  
 6. That one is Abdu and Maman's.

- BB. 1. Those are ours.  
 2. Those are theirs.  
 3. Those are Abdu and Maman's.

- CC. 1. That child is ours.  
 2. That one is ours.  
 3. Those children are ours.  
 4. Those are ours.

- DD. 1. Fari woyongo ga' ti Abdu  
nda Maman wone.
2. Woyongo ga' ti Abdu  
nda Maman wone.
3. Fari woyongo ya' ga' ti Abdu  
nda Maman woney.
4. Woyongo ya' ga' ti Abdu  
nda Maman woney.

- DD. 1. That field is Abdu and Maman's.
2. That one is Abdu and Maman's.
3. Those fields are Abdu and  
Maman's.
4. Those are Abdu and Maman's.

### Phonology Drills<sup>1</sup>

- bi.
- A. 1. Amina go ga habu bi.

- bi
2. Tyino bi.

- bi
3. Tafe bi no.

- bi
4. Ay gq'da bi.

- bi
5. Hari ka' bi.

- bi
6. A go turi bi ra.

- biri
- B. 1. Ha'so na biri hamey.

- biri
2. Ay no na kotyiyo biri.

- to thread (cotton)
- A. 1. Amina is threading cotton.

- late
2. It's late.

- black (indef.)
3. It's a black tafe.

- wound, sore (indef.)
4. I have a wound.

- yesterday
5. It rained yesterday.

- shade (indef.)
6. It's in the shade of a tree.

- bone (indef.)
- B. 1. The dog took a bone and escaped.

- to raise
2. I raised this child.

biya

C. 1. Ay go fuwo biya ra.

biya

2. Abdu biya ga koy Doso.

beri

D. 1. Abdu go ga turo beri.

beri

2. Ay na Adamu beri.

beri

3. Bibata beri son'o.

ba

E. 1. Ay na ay ba sa'bu.

bā

2. Ay ga bā Bibata.

bā

3. A bā ni.

bā

4. Bā ni ga bay.

bani

F. 1. Son'o Abdu du bani.

bāni

2. Adamu na bāni ka'be ka.

bāni

3. Hima, bāni ka' ni furo haro ra?

shade (def.)

C. 1. I'm in the shade of the house.

to leave in the morning.

2. Abdu left for Doso this morning.

to cut

D. 1. Abdu is cutting a tree.

to speak ill of

2. I spoke ill of Adamu.

to grow big

3. Bibata is big now.

part, portion (indef.)

E. 1. I took my portion.

to want, like, love

2. I like Bibata.

more than, greater than

3. He is more important than you.

even

4. Even you know.

health (indef.)

F. 1. Abdu is better now.

bani (a type of tree)(indef.)

2. Adamu removed a branch of the bani.

why? (as a reproach)

3. Hima, why did you go back in the water?

buru  
G. 1. Buru go bena ra.

buru  
2. Abdu na gorn'o buru fo n'wa.

būru  
3. Ay no dala hi'ka būru.

cloud (indef.)

G. 1. There are clouds in the sky.

half (of a cooked fowl)  
(indef.)

2. Abdu ate half a chicken.

bread (indef.)

3. Give me two dalas (worth) of bread.

### Note on the Phonology Drills

1. In Djerma the meaning of many words having identical form can be understood only in context. Many such words, however, differ from each other in vowel length. For example, note the contrast berī 'to cut' or 'to speak ill of' and beri 'to grow big,' where the vowel of the first syllable of berī 'to grow big' is longer than the corresponding vowel of beri 'to cut' or 'to speak ill of.' A macron over a vowel is used in these drills to denote length. Some words differ only in the doubling of a consonant. Note, for example, fata 'wing' and fatta 'to go out' in Unit 20 below.

The Phonology Drills of Units 12 - 20 illustrate these features of Djerma speech.

UNIT 13

Dialogue 1

fo'do

road, path (indef.)

fo'da

road, path (def.)

A: Fo'do fe ga ti Doso fo'da?

A: Which is the road to Doso?

B: Doso fo'da ne.

B: That's the road to Doso.

meru

far

A: Doso ga meru ne?

A: Is Doso far from here?

nan

near

B: Ha'a, a ga nan.

B: No, it's near.

si'tina

first, next

bo'

on

I'ga ga ti kwara si'tina fo'da

It's the first village on the

bo'.

road.

Dialogue 2

boro

person, one (indef.)

da

(emphasizes the manner  
of an action)

A: Mate no boro ga, koy da Tilaberi?

A: How do you go to Tilaberi?

B: Tilaberi fo'da ne.

B: That's the road to Tilaberi.

hare

direction (def./indef.)

gana

to follow

A: Ne hare no boro ga gana?

A: Do you go in that direction?

B: Oho.

B: Yes.

kubi

to turn

hi'ka'ta

second

Boro ga kubi kwara hi'ka'ta de.

You turn at the second village.

ka'be  
n'wari  
ka'be n'wari<sup>1</sup>  
hare

A: Boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?

ka'buwo

B: Ha'a, boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare.

A: Tilaberi ga man ne?

B: Ha'a, a ga moru.

### Dialogue 3

hi'za'ta

A: Boro ga kubi kwara hi'za'ta do.

B: Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare?

A: Ha'a, boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare.

### Dialogue 4

Ndu'ga

A: Man Ndu'ga kwara?

B: A go ne hare.

A: Kwara si'tina no?

i

B: Ha'a, i hi'za'ta no.

Gankale<sup>2</sup>

Gankale si'tina<sup>3</sup> no.

Saga<sup>2</sup>

Saga i hi'ka'ta no.

hand (indef.)  
item of food (indef.)  
right hand (indef.)  
toward

A: Do you turn to the right?

left hand (def./indef.)

B: No, you turn to the left.

A: Is Tilaberi near here?

B: No, it's far.

third

A: You turn at the third village.

B: Do you turn to the left?

A: No, you turn to the right.

Ndu'ga

A: Where is Ndu'ga village?

B: It's that way.

A: Is it the next village?

(replaces the noun when  
an adjective stands alone)

B: No, it's the third.

Gankale

Gankale is the first.

Saga

Saga is the second.

### Dialogue 5

motey  
kay  
A: Man no motey<sup>4</sup> ga kay?

B: Habo do no i ga kay.

A: Ne hare no i ga kay?

ya  
B: Ha'a, ya hare no i ga kay.

buses, trucks, cars (def.)  
to stop

A: Where do the buses stop?

B: They stop at the market.

A: Do they stop on this side?

there  
B: No, they stop on that side.

### Dialogue 6

A: Ya hare no i ga kay?

B: Ha'a, ne hare no i ga kay.

A: Do they stop on that side?

B: No, they stop on this side.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. Literally, the hand (with which one eats) food.
2. A village.
3. Si'tina is the only ordinal numeral which is not preceded by i in this type of structure.
4. Typically, in remote villages motey refers to all types of motor vehicles.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Fo'do fo ga ti Doso fo'da?  
2. Fo'do fo ga ti Ndu'ga fo'da?  
3. Fo'do fo ga ti Gankale fo'da?  
4. Fo'do fo ga ti Saga fo'da?

- A. 1. Which is the road to Doso?  
2. Which is the road to Ndu'ga?  
3. Which is the road to Gankale?  
4. Which is the road to Saga?

- B. 1. Mate no boro ga koy da Doso?  
 2. Mate no boro ga koy da Ndu'ga?  
 3. Mate no boro ga koy da Gankale?  
 4. Mate no boro ga koy da Saga?

- C. 1. Man Doso kwara?  
 2. Man Ndu'ga kwara?  
 3. Man Gankale kwara?  
 4. Man Saga kwara?

- D. 1. Doso fo'da ne.  
 2. Ndu'ga fo'da ne.  
 3. Gankale fo'da ne.  
 4. Saga fo'da ne.

- E. 1. Doso ga moru ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga man.  
 2. Ndu'ga ga moru ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga man.  
 3. Gankale ga moru ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga man.  
 4. Saga ga moru ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga man.

- F. 1. Doso ga man ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga moru.  
 2. Ndu'ga ga man ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga moru.  
 3. Gankale ga man ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga moru.  
 4. Saga ga man ne?  
 Ha'a, a ga moru.

- B. 1. How do you go to Doso?  
 2. How do you go to Ndu'ga?  
 3. How do you go to Gankale?  
 4. How do you go to Saga?

- C. 1. Where is Doso village?  
 2. Where is Ndu'ga village?  
 3. Where is Gankale village?  
 4. Where is Saga village?

- D. 1. That's the road to Doso.  
 2. That's the road to Ndu'ga.  
 3. That's the road to Gankale.  
 4. That's the road to Saga.

- E. 1. Is Doso far from here?  
 No, it's near.  
 2. Is Ndu'ga far from here?  
 No, it's near.  
 3. Is Gankale far from here?  
 No, it's near.  
 4. Is Saga far from here?  
 No, it's near.

- F. 1. Is Doso near here?  
 No, it's far.  
 2. Is Ndu'ga near here?  
 No, it's far.  
 3. Is Gankale near here?  
 No, it's far.  
 4. Is Saga near here?  
 No, it's far.

G. 1. Bere ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?

2. Ay ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?

3. Iri ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?

H. 1. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare?

2. Ay ga kubi ka'buwo hare?

3. Iri ga kubi ka'buwo hare?

I. 1. Bore ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?

Ohe.

2. Bore ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?

Ha'a.

3. Bere ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare?

Ha'a, bere ga kubi ka'buwo hare.

J. 1. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare?

Ohe.

2. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo hare?

Ha'a.

3. Bere ga kubi ka'buwo hare?

Ha'a, boro ga kubi ka'be n'wari hare.

K. 1. Ne hare no bore ga gana?

2. Ne hare no ay ga gana?

3. Ne hare no iri ga gana?

G. 1. Do you turn to the right?

2. Do I turn to the right?

3. Do we turn to the right?

H. 1. Do you turn to the left?

2. Do I turn to the left?

3. Do we turn to the left?

I. 1. Do you turn to the right?

Yes.

2. Do you turn to the right?

No.

3. Do you turn to the right?

No, you turn to the left.

J. 1. Do you turn to the left?

Yes.

2. Do you turn to the left?

No.

3. Do you turn to the left?

No, you turn to the right.

K. 1. Do you go in that direction?

2. Do I go in that direction?

3. Do we go in that direction?

L. 1. Ne hare no boro ga gana?  
Oho.

2. Ne hare no boro ga gana?  
Oho. A go ne hare.

3. Ne hare no boro ga gana?  
Oho. Boro ga kubi ka'be  
n'wari hare.

4. Ne hare no boro ga gana?  
Oho. Boro ga kubi ka'buwo  
hare.

M. 1. Kwara si'tina no?

2. Kwara hi'ka'ta no?

3. Kwara hi'za'ta no?

N. 1. Boro ga kubi kwara si'tina do.

2. Boro ga kubi kwara hi'ka'ta do.

3. Boro ga kubi kwara hi'za'ta do.

O. 1. Boro ga kubi habu si'tina do.

2. Boro ga kubi habu hi'ka'ta do.

3. Boro ga kubi habu hi'za'ta do.

P. 1. Boro ga kubi fo'do si'tina do.

2. Boro ga kubi fo'do hi'ka'ta do.

3. Boro ga kubi fo'do hi'za'ta do.

Q. 1. I'ga ga ti kwara si'tina  
fo'da bo'.

2. I'ga ga ti fari si'tina  
fo'da bo'.

3. I'ga ga ti fu si'tina fo'da  
bo'.

L. 1. Do you go in that direction?  
Yes.

2. Do you go in that direction?  
Yes. It's the way.

3. Do you go in that direction?  
Yes. You turn to the right.

4. Do you go in that direction?  
Yes. You turn to the left.

M. 1. Is it the first/next village?

2. Is it the second village?

3. Is it the third village?

N. 1. You turn at the first village.

2. You turn at the second village.

3. You turn at the third village.

O. 1. You turn at the first market.

2. You turn at the second market.

3. You turn at the third market.

P. 1. You turn at the first road.

2. You turn at the second road.

3. You turn at the third road.

Q. 1. It's the first village on the  
road.

2. It's the first field on the  
road.

3. It's the first house on the  
road.

R. 1. I'ga ga ti kwara hi'ka'ta  
fo'da bo'.

2. I'ga ga ti fari hi'ka'ta  
fo'da bo'.

3. I'ga ga ti fu hi'ka'ta.  
fo'da bo'.

S. 1. I'ga ga ti kwara hi'za'ta  
fo'da bo'.

2. I'ga ga ti fari hi'za'ta  
fo'da bo'.

3. I'ga ga ti fu hi'za'ta fo'da  
bo'.

T. 1. Si'tina no.

2. I hi'ka'ta no.

3. I hi'za'ta no.

U. 1. Doso si'tina no.

2. Ndu'ga si'tina no.

3. Gankale si'tina no.

4. Saga si'tina no.

V. 1. Doso i hi'ka'ta no.

2. Ndu'ga i hi'ka'ta no.

3. Gankale i hi'ka'ta no.

4. Saga i hi'ka'ta no.

W. 1. Doso i hi'za'ta no.

2. Ndu'ga i hi'za'ta no.

3. Gankale i hi'za'ta no.

4. Saga i hi'za'ta no.

X. 1. Habe do no i ga kay.

2. Kwara do no i ga kay.

3. Fo'do do no i ga kay.

R. 1. It's the second village on  
the road.

2. It's the second field on the  
road.

3. It's the second house on the  
road.

S. 1. It's the third village on  
the road.

2. It's the third field on the  
road.

3. It's the third house on the  
road.

T. 1. It's the first.

2. It's the second.

3. It's the third.

U. 1. Doso is the first.

2. Ndu'ga is the first.

3. Gankale is the first.

4. Saga is the first.

V. 1. Doso is the second.

2. Ndu'ga is the second.

3. Gankale is the second.

4. Saga is the second.

W. 1. Doso is the third.

2. Ndu'ga is the third.

3. Gankale is the third.

4. Saga is the third.

X. 1. They stop at the market.

2. They stop at the village.

3. They stop at the road.

Y. 1. Man no motey ga kay?  
Habo do no i ga kay.

2. Man no motey ga kay?  
Kwara do no i ga kay.

3. Man no motey ga kay?  
Fo'da do no i ga kay.

Z. 1. Ne hare no i ga kay?  
Oho.

2. Ne hare no i ga kay?  
Ha'a.

3. Ne hare no i ga kay?  
Ha'a, ya hare no i ga kay.

AA. 1. Ya hare no i ga kay?  
Oho.

2. Ya hare no i ga kay?  
Ha'a.

3. Ya hare no i ga kay?  
Ha'a, ne hare no i ga kay.

Y. 1. Where do the buses stop?  
They stop at the market.

2. Where do the buses stop?  
They stop at the village.

3. Where do the buses stop?  
They stop at the road.

Z. 1. Do they stop on this side?  
Yes.

2. Do they stop on this side?  
No.

3. Do they stop on this side?  
No, they stop on that side.

AA. 1. Do they stop on that side?  
Yes.

2. Do they stop on that side?  
No.

3. Do they stop on that side?  
No, they stop on this side.

### Phonology Drills

tibi  
A. 1. Mota tibi.

tibi  
2. Ay mo subu tibi fo.

tibi  
3. I na Abdu tibi.

to get stuck  
A. 1. The vehicle got stuck.

handful (indef.)  
2. Give me a handful of grass.

to seize  
3. They seized Abdu.

ta  
B. 1. Maman, ta goro ne.

ta  
2. Ay ta ni senno.

ta  
3. Maman go ga tafa ta.

tā  
4. Ay tā na toboy di.

tamu  
C. 1. Abdu go'da tamu hanne.

tamu  
2. Ay na Abdu kwayo tamu.

ta'da  
D. 1. Gern'ey go ta'da bo'.

tā'da  
2. Amina na tā'da hina.

tafa  
E. 1. Abdu tafa hay.

tāfa  
2. Bakari go ga tāfa ta.

tu  
F. 1. Hawro go tu ra.

to take  
B. 1. Maman, take the cola nut.

to accept  
2. I've accepted your word.

to sew  
3. Maman is sewing the tafa.

trap (indef.)  
4. My trap caught a hare.

shoes (indef.)  
C. 1. Abdu has pretty shoes.

to step on  
2. I stepped on Abdu's kwayo.

shed (indef.)  
D. 1. The chickens are in the shed.

fruit of the calabash  
tree (def./indef.)  
2. Amina cooked the fruit of the  
calabash tree.

mare (def.)  
E. 1. Abdu's mare foaled.

tafa (garment)(def.)  
2. Bakari is sewing the tafa.

plate (indef.)  
F. 1. The food is on a plate.

tu  
2. Abdu, tu! Mi ga no ay go.

answer!  
2. Abdu, answer! I'm talking to  
you.

tyi'se  
G. 1. Abdu ga tyi'se Hima ga.

rivalry, jealousy (def./  
indef.)  
G. 1. Abdu is jealous of Hima.

tyi'se  
2. Loketoro na zankey tyi'se.

to vaccinate  
2. The doctor vaccinated the  
children.

tyimse  
H. 1. Ay na ka'be tyimse dumbu.

finger nail (indef.)  
H. 1. I cut my fingernails.

tyimse  
2. Ay no gasu tyimse.

piece (indef.)  
2. Give me a piece of calabash.

tya  
I. 1. Ay tya marey.

foot (def.)  
I. 1. My foot is hurt.

tya  
2. Ladan go ga tya.

to call to prayer  
2. The muezzin is calling to  
prayer.

UNIT 14  
Dialogue 1

wo  
alfari  
A: Bakari wo alfari no?

(signals the subject in some structures)  
farmer (indef.)

A: Is Bakari a farmer?

kurko  
B: Ha'a, kurko no.

herdsman (indef.)  
B: No, he's a herdsman.

kuru  
A: Abdu ga kuru no?

to herd  
A: Does Abdu herd?

far  
B: Ha'a, a ga far no.

to farm  
B: No, he farms.

Dialogue 2

goy  
te  
A: Goy fo no Maman ga te?

work (indef. sg.)  
to do, make  
A: What work does Maman do?

zam  
B: Zam no.

blacksmith (indef.)  
B: He's a blacksmith.

za  
A: Za wati fo no a te zam?

since  
A: How long has he been a blacksmith?

dyiri  
hi'ka  
ka'  
B: Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' a te zam.

year (indef.)  
two  
that (relative)  
B: He's been a blacksmith for two years.

fo  
ga  
A: Boro fo ga a ga?

gako  
B: Oho, a go'da gako fo.

a/an, one  
to help  
A: Does someone help him?

helper (indef.)  
B: Yes, he has one helper.

### Dialogue 3

go ga  
A: Ni go ga<sup>1</sup> far lm'kuna?

B: Ha'a, hu'kuna ay go ga  
kuru no.

(signals action in progress)  
A: Are you farming today?

B: No, I'm herding today.

mardye  
A: Boro mardye no go ga ni ga?

hi'za  
B: Boro hi'za no go ga ay ga.

how much, how many  
A: How many men are helping you?

three  
B: Three men are helping me.

### Dialogue 4

A: I fo no Yakuba go ga te  
hu'kuna?

dan  
B: A go ga dan no hu'kuna.

A: May no go ga a ga?

B: Abdu no go ga a ga.

A: What is Yakuba doing today?

to forge  
B: He's forging today.

A: Who's helping him?

B: Abdu is helping him.

### Dialogue 5

A: Za wati fo no ni go ga dan?

A: How long have you been forging?

ga

five

B: Dyiri gu ne ka' ay go ga dan.

B: I've been forging for five years.

A: Ni go'da gako ya'?

A: Do you have helpers?

tatyi

four

B: Oho, ay go'da gako tatyi.

B: Yes, I have four helpers.

### Dialogue 6

A: Goy fo no ni ga te?

A: What work do you do?

B: Ay we alfari no.

B: I'm a farmer.

### Dialogue 7

A: Man Abdu ge?

A: Where is Abdu?

B: A go farey ra.

B: He's in the fields.

A: I'ga wo alfari no?

A: Is he a farmer?

B: Oho, i'ga wo alfari no.

B: Yes, he's a farmer.

### Note on the Dialogues

1. There are only three tenses in Djerna: Present, Past, and Future. The Past is identical with the Infinitive; the Future is formed by placing ga before the Infinitive; the Present is formed by placing ga, go ga, or go no ga before the Infinitive. The most common form of the Imperative

is identical with the Infinitive. The Subjunctive, formed by placing ma before the Infinitive, will be treated in a later unit. All verbs except "to be" and "to have" follow these patterns. "To have" is treated in later units. "To be" is formed in various ways: with go and bara in the Present; with goro in the Past; with ga in the Future; and with the copulas no, ne, and ga ti.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Bakari wo alfari no?  
 2. Abdu wo alfari no?  
 3. Maman wo alfari no?  
 4. Yakuba wo alfari no?

- B. 1. Bakari wo kurko no?  
 2. Abdu wo kurko no?  
 3. Maman wo kurko no?  
 4. Yakuba wo kurko no?

- C. 1. Bakari wo zam no?  
 2. Abdu wo zam no?  
 3. Maman wo zam no?  
 4. Yakuba wo zam no?

- D. 1. Bakari wo gako no?<sup>1</sup>  
 2. Abdu wo gako no?<sup>1</sup>  
 3. Maman wo gako no?<sup>1</sup>  
 4. Yakuba wo gako no?<sup>1</sup>

- E. 1. Ni wo alfari no?<sup>1</sup>  
 2. Ni wo kurko no?<sup>1</sup>  
 3. Ni wo zam no?<sup>1</sup>  
 4. Ni wo gako no?<sup>1</sup>

- A. 1. Is Bakari a farmer?  
 2. Is Abdu a farmer?  
 3. Is Maman a farmer?  
 4. Is Yakuba a farmer?

- B. 1. Is Bakari a herdsman?  
 2. Is Abdu a herdsman?  
 3. Is Maman a herdsman?  
 4. Is Yakuba a herdsman?

- C. 1. Is Bakari a blacksmith?  
 2. Is Abdu a blacksmith?  
 3. Is Maman a blacksmith?  
 4. Is Yakuba a blacksmith?

- D. 1. Is Bakari a helper?  
 2. Is Abdu a helper?  
 3. Is Maman a helper?  
 4. Is Yakuba a helper?

- E. 1. Are you a farmer?  
 2. Are you a herdsman?  
 3. Are you a blacksmith?  
 4. Are you a helper?

- F. 1. I'ga we alfari no?<sup>1</sup>  
 2. I'ga we kurko no?<sup>1</sup>  
 3. I'ga we sam no?<sup>1</sup>  
 4. I'ga we gako no?<sup>1</sup>

- F. 1. Is he a farmer?  
 2. Is he a herdsman?  
 3. Is he a blacksmith?  
 4. Is he a helper?

- G. 1. Alfari no.  
 2. Kurko no.  
 3. Zam no.  
 4. Gako no.<sup>1</sup>

- G. 1. He's a farmer.  
 2. He's a herdsman.  
 3. He's a blacksmith.  
 4. He's a helper.

- H. 1. Ay we alfari no.  
 2. Ay we kurko no.  
 3. Ay we sam no.  
 4. Ay we gako no.<sup>1</sup>

- H. 1. I'm a farmer.  
 2. I'm a herdsman.  
 3. I'm a blacksmith.  
 4. I'm a helper.

- I. 1. I'ga we alfari no.  
 2. I'ga we kurko no.  
 3. I'ga we sam no.  
 4. I'ga we gako no.<sup>1</sup>

- I. 1. He's a farmer.  
 2. He's a herdsman.  
 3. He's a blacksmith.  
 4. He's a helper.

- J. 1. Bakari ga far no?  
 2. Abdu ga far no?  
 3. Maman ga far no?  
 4. Yakuba ga far no?

- J. 1. Does Bakari farm?  
 2. Does Abdu farm?  
 3. Does Maman farm?  
 4. Does Yakuba farm?

- K. 1. Bakari ga kuru no?  
 2. Abdu ga kuru no?  
 3. Maman ga kuru no?  
 4. Yakuba ga kuru no?

- K. 1. Does Bakari herd?  
 2. Does Abdu herd?  
 3. Does Maman herd?  
 4. Does Yakuba herd?

- L. 1. Bakari ga dan no?  
 2. Abdu ga dan no?  
 3. Maman ga dan no?  
 4. Yakuba ga dan no?

- L. 1. Does Bakari forge?  
 2. Does Abdu forge?  
 3. Does Maman forge?  
 4. Does Yakuba forge?

- M. 1. Ni ga far no?  
2. Ni ga kuru no?  
3. Ni ga dan no?

- N. 1. Aran ga far no?  
2. Aran ga kuru no?  
3. Aran ga dan no?

- O. 1. A ga far no?  
2. A ga kuru no?  
3. A ga dan no?

- P. 1. I ga far no?  
2. I ga kuru no?  
3. I ga dan no?

- Q. 1. Bakari ga far no.  
2. Abdu ga far no.  
3. Maman ga far no.  
4. Yakuba ga far no.

- R. 1. Bakari ga kuru no.  
2. Abdu ga kuru no.  
3. Maman ga kuru no.  
4. Yakuba ga kuru no.

- S. 1. Ay ga far no.  
2. Ay ga kuru no.  
3. Ay ga dan no.

- T. 1. Iri ga far no.  
2. Iri ga kuru no.  
3. Iri ga dan no.

- M. 1. Do you farm?  
2. Do you herd?  
3. Do you forge?

- N. 1. Do you farm?  
2. Do you herd?  
3. Do you forge?

- O. 1. Does he farm?  
2. Does he herd?  
3. Does he forge?

- P. 1. Do they farm?  
2. Do they herd?  
3. Do they forge?

- Q. 1. Bakari farms.  
2. Abdu farms.  
3. Maman farms.  
4. Yakuba farms.

- R. 1. Bakari herds.  
2. Abdu herds.  
3. Maman herds.  
4. Yakuba herds.

- S. 1. I farm.  
2. I herd.  
3. I forge.

- T. 1. We farm.  
2. We herd.  
3. We forge.

- U. 1. A ga far no.  
 2. A ga kuru no.  
 3. A ga dan no.

- U. 1. He farms.  
 2. He herds.  
 3. He forges.

- V. 1. Goy fo ne Bakari ga te?  
 2. Goy fo ne Abdu ga te?  
 3. Goy fo ne Maman ga te?  
 4. Goy fo ne Yakuba ga te?

- V. 1. What work does Bakari do?  
 2. What work does Abdu do?  
 3. What work does Maman do?  
 4. What work does Yakuba do?

- W. 1. Goy fo ne ni ga te?  
 2. Goy fo ne aran ga te?  
 3. Goy fo ne a ga te?  
 4. Goy fo ne i ga te?

- W. 1. What work do you do?  
 2. What work do you do?  
 3. What work does he do?  
 4. What work do they do?

### Note on the Structural Drills

1. These expressions assume that the person referred to has already been mentioned in the conversation.

### Phonology Drills

di

- A. 1. Ay na ni di.

to catch, hold

- A. 1. I've caught you.

di

2. Tafa di.

to conceive

2. The mare conceived.

dī

3. A dī ni.

to see

3. He saw you.

desi

- B. 1. Abdu koy fari nda desi.

ax (indef.)

- B. 1. Abdu went to the field with an ax.

dēsi

2. Tyurey dēsi.

to fly

2. The birds have flown away.

dam

C. 1. Abdu gorn'a dam.

dam

2. Adamu go ga yowa dam.

do

D. 1. Ay koy do di.

do

2. Hawey do isa.

dō

3. Ay koy ni dō.

dono

E. 1. Ni 'dono ga kan.

dono

2. Ni na dono dibi?

dōru

F. 1. Mannan Abdu dōru.

dōru

2. Amina wa dōru ga 'da.

du

G. 1. Ay du bari.

dū

2. Abdu na dū di haro ra.

dū

3. Ay na dū faru.

to lay eggs

C. 1. Abdu's hen laid an egg.

to feed (by force, for fattening)

2. Adamu is feeding the camel.

cricket (indef.)

D. 1. I went to catch crickets.

to reach (a goal)

2. The cows reached the river.

at, to the house of

3. I want to your house.

song (def.)

E. 1. Your song is pleasant.

ball of millet (def.)

2. Have you mixed the millet ball?

to be sick

F. 1. Last year Abdu was sick.

to drop, spill

2. Amina's milk spilled on the ground.

to have, possess

G. 1. I had a horse.

du (a type of fish) (indef.)

2. Abdu caught a du in the water.

millet chaff (indef.)

3. I separated the grains from the chaff.

UNIT 15

Structural Drills

A. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te alfarif?

2. Za wati fo no Abdu te alfarif?

3. Za wati fo no Maman te alfarif?

4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te alfarif?

B. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te kurke?

2. Za wati fo no Abdu te kurke?

3. Za wati fo no Maman te kurke?

4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te kurke?

C. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te zam?

2. Za wati fo no Abdu te zam?

3. Za wati fo no Maman te zam?

4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te zam?

D. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari te gake?

2. Za wati fo no Abdu te gake?

3. Za wati fo no Maman te gake?

4. Za wati fo no Yakuba te gake?

A. 1. How long has Bakari been a farmer?

2. How long has Abdu been a farmer?

3. How long has Maman been a farmer?

4. How long has Yakuba been a farmer?

B. 1. How long has Bakari been a herdsman?

2. How long has Abdu been a herdsman?

3. How long has Maman been a herdsman?

4. How long has Yakuba been a herdsman?

C. 1. How long has Bakari been a blacksmith?

2. How long has Abdu been a blacksmith?

3. How long has Maman been a blacksmith?

4. How long has Yakuba been a blacksmith?

D. 1. How long has Bakari been a helper?

2. How long has Abdu been a helper?

3. How long has Maman been a helper?

4. How long has Yakuba been a helper?

E. 1. Za wati fo no ni te alfari?

2. Za wati fo no ni te kurko?

3. Za wati fo no ni te zam?

4. Za wati fo no ni te gako?<sup>1</sup>

F. 1. Za wati fo no a te alfari?

2. Za wati fo no a te kurko?

3. Za wati fo no a te zam?

4. Za wati fo no a te gako?<sup>1</sup>

G. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari go ga far?

2. Za wati fo no Abdu go ga far?

3. Za wati fo no Maman go ga far?

4. Za wati fo no Yakuba go ga far?

H. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari go ga kuru?

2. Za wati fo no Abdu go ga kuru?

3. Za wati fo no Maman go ga kuru?

4. Za wati fo no Yakuba go ga kuru?

I. 1. Za wati fo no Bakari go ga dan?

2. Za wati fo no Abdu go ga dan?

E. 1. How long have you been a farmer?

2. How long have you been a herdsman?

3. How long have you been a black-smith?

4. How long have you been a helper?

F. 1. How long has he been a farmer?

2. How long has he been a herdsman?

3. How long has he been a black-smith?

4. How long has he been a helper?

G. 1. How long has Bakari been farming?

2. How long has Abdu been farming?

3. How long has Maman been farming?

4. How long has Yakuba been farming?

H. 1. How long has Bakari been herding?

2. How long has Abdu been herding?

3. How long has Maman been herding?

4. How long has Yakuba been herding?

I. 1. How long has Bakari been forging?

2. How long has Abdu been forging?

3. Za wati fo ne Maman go  
ga dan?

4. Za wati fo ne Yakuba go  
ga dan?

- J. 1. Za wati fo no ni go ga far?  
2. Za wati fo no ni go ga kuru?  
3. Za wati fo no ni go ga dan?

- K. 1. 'Za wati fo ne a go ga far?  
2. Za wati fo ne a go ga kuru?  
3. Za wati fo ne a go ga dan?

- L. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' ay te  
alfari.  
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay te  
alfari.  
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay te  
alfari.  
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay te  
alfari.  
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay te  
alfari.

- M. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' ay te  
kurko.  
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay te  
kurko.  
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay te  
kurko.  
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay te  
kurko.  
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay te  
kurko.

3. How long has Maman been forging?

4. How long has Yakuba been forging?

- J. 1. How long have you been farming?  
2. How long have you been herding?  
3. How long have you been forging?

- K. 1. How long has he been farming?  
2. How long has he been herding?  
3. How long has he been forging?

- L. 1. I've been a farmer for a year.  
2. I've been a farmer for two years.  
3. I've been a farmer for three  
years.  
4. I've been a farmer for four  
years.  
5. I've been a farmer for five  
years.

- M. 1. I've been a herdsman for a year.  
2. I've been a herdsman for two  
years.  
3. I've been a herdsman for three  
years.  
4. I've been a herdsman for four  
years.  
5. I've been a herdsman for five  
years.

- N. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' a te zam.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' a te zam.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' a te zam.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' a te zam.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' a te zam.

- O. 1. Dyiri fe ne ka' ay go ga far.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay go ga far.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay go ga far.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay go ga far.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay go ga far.

- P. 1. Dyiri fo ne ka' ay go ga kuru.
2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' ay go ga kuru.
3. Dyiri hi'za ne ka' ay go ga kuru.
4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' ay go ga kuru.
5. Dyiri gu ne ka' ay go ga kuru.

- N. 1. He's been a blacksmith for a year.
2. He's been a blacksmith for two years.
3. He's been a blacksmith for three years.
4. He's been a blacksmith for four years.
5. He's been a blacksmith for five years.

- O. 1. I've been farming for a year.
2. I've been farming for two years.
3. I've been farming for three years.
4. I've been farming for four years.
5. I've been farming for five years.

- P. 1. I've been herding for a year.
2. I've been herding for two years.
3. I've been herding for three years.
4. I've been herding for four years.
5. I've been herding for five years.

Q. 1. Dyiri fe ne ka' a go ga dan.

2. Dyiri hi'ka ne ka' a go ga dan.

3. Dyiri hi'sa ne ka' a go ga dan.

4. Dyiri tatyi ne ka' a go ga dan.

5. Dyiri gu ne ka' a go ga dan.

R. 1. Bere fe ga ni ga?  
Oho, ay go'da gako fe.

2. Bere fe ga ni ga?  
Oho, ay go'da gako hi'ka.

3. Bere fe ga aran ga?  
Oho, iri go'da gako hi'sa.

4. Bere fe ga a ga?  
Oho, a go'da gako tatyi.

5. Bere fe ga i ga?  
Oho, i go'da gako gu.

S. 1. Ni go'da gako ya'?  
Oho, ay go'da gako hi'ka.

2. Aran go'da gako ya'?  
Oho, iri go'da gako hi'sa.

3. A go'da gako ya'?  
Oho, a go'da gako tatyi.

4. I go'da gako ya'?  
Oho, i go'da gako gu.

Q. 1. He's been forging for a year.

2. He's been forging for two years.

3. He's been forging for three years.

4. He's been forging for four years.

5. He's been forging for five years.

R. 1. Does someone help you?  
Yes, I have one helper.

2. Does someone help you?  
Yes, I have two helpers.

3. Does someone help you?  
Yes, we have three helpers.

4. Does someone help him?  
Yes, he has four helpers.

5. Does someone help them?  
Yes, they have five helpers.

S. 1. Do you have helpers?  
Yes, I have two helpers.

2. Do you have helpers?  
Yes, we have three helpers.

3. Does he have helpers?  
Yes, he has four helpers.

4. Do they have helpers?  
Yes, they have five helpers.

- T. 1. Bakari go ga far hu'kuna?  
 2. Abdu go ga far hu'kuna?  
 3. Maman go ga far hu'kuna?  
 4. Yakuba go ga far hu'kuna?

- U. 1. Bakari go ga kuru hu'kuna?  
 2. Abdu go ga kuru hu'kuna?  
 3. Maman go ga kuru hu'kuna?  
 4. Yakuba go ga kuru hu'kuna?

- V. 1. Bakari go ga dan hu'kuna?  
 2. Abdu go ga dan hu'kuna?  
 3. Maman go ga dan hu'kuna?  
 4. Yakuba go ga dan hu'kuna?

- W. 1. Ni go ga far hu'kuna?  
 2. Ni go ga kuru hu'kuna?  
 3. Ni go ga dan hu'kuna?

- X. 1. Aran go ga far hu'kuna?  
 2. Aran go ga kuru hu'kuna?  
 3. Aran go ga dan hu'kuna?

- Y. 1. A go ga far hu'kuna?  
 2. A go ga kuru hu'kuna?  
 3. A go ga dan hu'kuna?

- Z. 1. I go ga far hu'kuna?  
 2. I go ga kuru hu'kuna?  
 3. I go ga dan hu'kuna?

- AA. 1. Hu'kuna Bakari go ga far no.  
 2. Hu'kuna Abdu go ga far no.  
 3. Hu'kuna Maman go ga far no.  
 4. Hu'kuna Yakuba go ga far no.

- T. 1. Is Bakari farming today?  
 2. Is Abdu farming today?  
 3. Is Maman farming today?  
 4. Is Yakuba farming today?

- U. 1. Is Bakari herding today?  
 2. Is Abdu herding today?  
 3. Is Maman herding today?  
 4. Is Yakuba herding today?

- V. 1. Is Bakari forging today?  
 2. Is Abdu forging today?  
 3. Is Maman forging today?  
 4. Is Yakuba forging today?

- W. 1. Are you farming today?  
 2. Are you herding today?  
 3. Are you forging today?

- X. 1. Are you farming today?  
 2. Are you herding today?  
 3. Are you forging today?

- Y. 1. Is he farming today?  
 2. Is he herding today?  
 3. Is he forging today?

- Z. 1. Are they farming today?  
 2. Are they herding today?  
 3. Are they forging today?

- AA. 1. Bakari is farming today.  
 2. Abdu is farming today.  
 3. Maman is farming today.  
 4. Yakuba is farming today.

- BB. 1. Hu'kuna Bakari go ga kuru no.  
 2. Hu'kuna Abdu go ga kuru no.  
 3. Hu'kuna Maman go ga kuru no.  
 4. Hu'kuna Yakuba go ga kuru no.

- BB. 1. Bakari is herding today.  
 2. Abdu is herding today.  
 3. Maman is herding today.  
 4. Yakuba is herding today.

- CC. 1. Hu'kuna Bakari go ga dan no.  
 2. Hu'kuna Abdu go ga dan no.  
 3. Hu'kuna Maman go ga dan no.  
 4. Hu'kuna Yakuba go ga dan no.

- CC. 1. Bakari is forging today.  
 2. Abdu is forging today.  
 3. Maman is forging today.  
 4. Yakuba is forging today.

- DD. 1. Hu'kuna ay go ga far no.  
 2. Hu'kuna ay go ga kuru no.  
 3. Hu'kuna ay go ga dan no.

- DD. 1. I'm farming today.  
 2. I'm herding today.  
 3. I'm forging today.

- EE. 1. Hu'kuna iri go ga far no.  
 2. Hu'kuna iri go ga kuru no.  
 3. Hu'kuna iri go ga dan no.

- EE. 1. We're farming today.  
 2. We're herding today.  
 3. We're forging today.

- FF. 1. Hu'kuna a go ga far no.  
 2. Hu'kuna a go ga kuru no.  
 3. Hu'kuna a go ga dan no.

- FF. 1. He's farming today.  
 2. He's herding today.  
 3. He's forging today.

- GG. 1. Hu'kuna i go ga far no.  
 2. Hu'kuna i go ga kuru no.  
 3. Hu'kuna i go ga dan no.

- GG. 1. They're farming today.  
 2. They're herding today.  
 3. They're forging today.

- HH. 1. Boro mardye no go ga Bakari  
 ga?  
 2. Boro mardye no go ga Abdu  
 ga?  
 3. Boro mardye no go ga Maman  
 ga?  
 4. Boro mardye no go ga Yakuba  
 ga?

- HH. 1. How many men are helping  
 Bakari?  
 2. How many men are helping  
 Abdu?  
 3. How many men are helping  
 Maman?  
 4. How many men are helping  
 Yakuba?

- II. 1. Boro mardye no go ga ni ga?  
 2. Boro mardye no go ga aran ga?  
 3. Boro mardye no go ga a ga?  
 4. Boro mardye no go ga i ga?

- JJ. 1. Boro hi'ka no go ga Bakari ga.  
 2. Boro hi'ka no go ga Abdu ga.  
 3. Boro hi'ka no go ga Maman ga.  
 4. Boro hi'ka no go ga Yakuba ga.

- KK. 1. Boro hi'za no go ga Bakari ga.  
 2. Boro hi'za no go ga Abdu ga.  
 3. Boro hi'za no go ga Maman ga.  
 4. Boro hi'za no go ga Yakuba ga.

- LL. 1. Boro tatyí no go ga Bakari ga.  
 2. Boro tatyí no go ga Abdu ga.  
 3. Boro tatyí no go ga Maman ga.  
 4. Boro tatyí no go ga Yakuba ga.

- MM. 1. Boro gu no go ga Bakari ga.  
 2. Boro gu no go ga Abdu ga.  
 3. Boro gu no go ga Maman ga.  
 4. Boro gu no go ga Yakuba ga.

- NN. 1. Boro hi'ka no go ga ay ga.  
 2. Boro hi'za no go ga ay ga.  
 3. Boro tatyí no go ga ay ga.  
 4. Boro gu no go ga ay ga.

- OO. 1. Boro hi'ka no go ga iri ga.  
 2. Boro hi'za no go ga iri ga.  
 3. Boro tatyí no go ga iri ga.  
 4. Boro gu no go ga iri ga.

- II. 1. How many men are helping you?  
 2. How many men are helping you?  
 3. How many men are helping him?  
 4. How many men are helping them?

- JJ. 1. Two men are helping Bakari.  
 2. Two men are helping Abdu.  
 3. Two men are helping Maman.  
 4. Two men are helping Yakuba.

- KK. 1. Three men are helping Bakari.  
 2. Three men are helping Abdu.  
 3. Three men are helping Maman.  
 4. Three men are helping Yakuba.

- LL. 1. Four men are helping Bakari.  
 2. Four men are helping Abdu.  
 3. Four men are helping Maman.  
 4. Four men are helping Yakuba.

- MM. 1. Five men are helping Bakari.  
 2. Five men are helping Abdu.  
 3. Five men are helping Maman.  
 4. Five men are helping Yakuba.

- NN. 1. Two men are helping me.  
 2. Three men are helping me.  
 3. Four men are helping me.  
 4. Five men are helping me.

- OO. 1. Two men are helping us.  
 2. Three men are helping us.  
 3. Four men are helping us.  
 4. Five men are helping us.

- PP. 1. Bere hi'ka no go ga a ga.  
 2. Bere hi'sa no go ga a ga.  
 3. Bere tatyi no go ga a ga.  
 4. Bere gu no go ga a ga.

- QQ. 1. Bere hi'ka no go ga i ga.  
 2. Bere hi'sa no go ga i ga.  
 3. Bere tatyi no go ga i ga.  
 4. Bere gu no go ga i ga.

- RR. 1. I fe no Bakari ge ga te hu'kuna?  
 2. I fe no Abdu ge ga te hu'kuna?  
 3. I fe no Maman ge ga te hu'kuna?  
 4. I fe no Yakuba ge ga te hu'kuna?

- SS. 1. I fe no ni go ga te hu'kuna?  
 2. I fe no aran ge ga te hu'kuna?  
 3. I fe no a ge ga te hu'kuna?  
 4. I fe no i ge ga te hu'kuna?

- TT. 1. Bakari ge ga far no hu'kuna.  
 2. Abdu ge ga far no hu'kuna.  
 3. Maman ge ga far no hu'kuna.  
 4. Yakuba ge ga far no hu'kuna.

- UU. 1. Bakari ge ga kuru no hu'kuna.  
 2. Abdu ge ga kuru no hu'kuna.  
 3. Maman ge ga kuru no hu'kuna.  
 4. Yakuba ge ga kuru no hu'kuna.

- VV. 1. Bakari ge ga dan ne hu'kuna.  
 2. Abdu ge ga dan ne hu'kuna.  
 3. Maman ge ga dan ne hu'kuna.  
 4. Yakuba ge ga dan ne hu'kuna.

- PP. 1. Two men are helping him.  
 2. Three men are helping him.  
 3. Four men are helping him.  
 4. Five men are helping him.

- QQ. 1. Two men are helping them.  
 2. Three men are helping them.  
 3. Four men are helping them.  
 4. Five men are helping them.

- RR. 1. What is Bakari doing today?  
 2. What is Abdu doing today?  
 3. What is Maman doing today?  
 4. What is Yakuba doing today?

- SS. 1. What are you doing today?  
 2. What are you doing today?  
 3. What is he doing today?  
 4. What are they doing today?

- TT. 1. Bakari is farming today.  
 2. Abdu is farming today.  
 3. Maman is farming today.  
 4. Yakuba is farming today.

- UU. 1. Bakari is herding today.  
 2. Abdu is herding today.  
 3. Maman is herding today.  
 4. Yakuba is herding today.

- VV. 1. Bakari is forging today.  
 2. Abdu is forging today.  
 3. Maman is forging today.  
 4. Yakuba is forging today.

- WW. 1. Ay go ga far no hu'kuna.  
 2. Ay go ga kuru no hu'kuna.  
 3. Ay go ga dan no hu'kuna.

- XX. 1. Iri go ga far no hu'kuna.  
 2. Iri go ga kuru no hu'kuna.  
 3. Iri go ga dan no hu'kuna.

- YY. 1. A go ga far no hu'kuna.  
 2. A go ga kuru no hu'kuna.  
 3. A go ga dan no hu'kuna.

- ZZ. 1. I go ga far no hu'kuna.  
 2. I go ga kuru no hu'kuna.  
 3. I go ga dan no hu'kuna.

- AAA. 1. May no go ga ni ga?  
 Bakari no go ga ay ga.  
 2. May no go ga aran ga?  
 Abdu no go ga iri ga.  
 3. May no go ga a ga?  
 Maman no go ga a ga.  
 4. May no go ga i ga?  
 Yakuba no go ga i ga.

- WW. 1. I'm farming today.  
 2. I'm herding today.  
 3. I'm forging today.

- XX. 1. We're farming today.  
 2. We're herding today.  
 3. We're forging today.

- YY. 1. He's farming today.  
 2. He's herding today.  
 3. He's forging today.

- ZZ. 1. They're farming today.  
 2. They're herding today.  
 3. They're forging today.

- AAA. 1. Who's helping you?  
 Bakari's helping me.  
 2. Who's helping you?  
 Abdu's helping us.  
 3. Who's helping him?  
 Maman's helping him.  
 4. Who's helping them?  
 Yakuba's helping them.

### Note on the Structural Drills

1. These expressions assume that the person referred to has already been mentioned in the conversation.

### Phonology Drills

ka  
 A. 1. Son'o no ay ka.

to arrive  
 A. 1. I arrived (just) now.

ka  
2. Abdu go'da ka hanno.

ka  
3. Ay na hamo ka kuse ra.

ke  
B. 1. Man ay ko koy?

ko  
2. Bibata na ko foy te.

ko  
3. Son'o no haro ko.

kom  
C. 1. Bibata foyo kom.

kom  
2. Abdu na Maman kom ham.

koy  
D. 1. Maman koy habu.

koy  
2. Irkoy ga ti koy.

koy  
3. Ay ga ti fedyi koy.

kwara  
E. 1. Ay go ga koy ni kwara.

kwāra  
2. Aran kwāra ga beri.

white horse (def./indef.)  
2. Abdu has a pretty white horse.

to take out  
3. I took the meat out of the pot.

child (def./indef.)  
B. 1. Where has my child gone?

ko (the baobab tree) (def./indef.)  
2. Bibata made a ko sauce.

to stop (of rain)  
3. The rain has stopped now.

thick (def./indef. sg.)  
C. 1. Bibata's sauce is thick.

to seize by force  
2. Abdu seized Maman's meat by force.

to go, leave  
D. 1. Maman went to the market.

chief, head (indef.)  
2. God is the chief.

owner (indef.)  
3. I'm the owner of the sheep.

house (def./indef.)  
E. 1. I'm going to your house.

village (def./indef.)  
2. Your village is big.

UNIT 16  
Dialogue 1

i fo  
duma

A: I fo no ni ga duma ni farey ra?

hayni  
damsi  
kolkoti

B: Hayni nda damsida kolkoti no  
ay ga duma.

A: Wati fo no ni ga damsida duma?

ha'do

B: Ha'do ka' ga kay<sup>1</sup> no ay ga duma.

bobe

A: Ni ga hayni bobe duma?

kayna

B: Ha'a, hayni kayna no ay ga duma.

what  
to sow

A: What do you sow in your fields?

millet (indef. sg.)  
peanut (indef. sg.)  
maize (indef. sg.)

B: I sow millet, peanuts, and  
maize.

A: When will you sow peanuts?

month (def.)

B: I'll sow next month.

a lot, much, many

A: Do you sow a lot of millet?

a little, a few

B: No, I sow (only) a little millet.

Dialogue 2

si'dyi

A: I fo no Bakari ga si'dyi i'ga  
farey ra?

rogo

kudaku

po'piter<sup>2</sup>

B: Rogo nda kudaku nda po'piter no  
a ga si'dyi.

to plant

A: What does Bakari plant in his  
fields?

cassava (indef. sg.)

sweet potato (indef. sg.)

potato (def./indef. sg.)

B: He plants cassava, sweet pota-  
toes, and potatoes.

A: Wati fe no a ga po'piter  
si'dyi?

A: When will he plant potatoes?

B: Ha'do ka' ga kay no a ga  
si'dyi.

B: He'll plant next month.

### Dialogue 3

A: I fe no Abdu nda Maman ga duma  
i'gey'farey ra?

A: What do Abdu and Maman sow in  
their fields?

B: Kalkoti ne i ga duma.

B: They sow maize.

### Dialogue 4

na

(signals the Past when the  
object precedes the verb)

A: Ni na rege nda kudaku si'dyi?

A: Have you planted cassava and  
sweet potatoes?

bu

to die

B: Oho, ha'do ka' bu<sup>I</sup> no ay si'dyi.

B: Yes, I planted last month.

A: Ni ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?

A: Do you plant only a few potatoes?

B: Ha'a, po'piter bobo no ay ga  
si'dyi.

B: No, I plant a lot of potatoes.

### Dialogue 5

A: Aran na hayni nda dansi duma?

A: Have you sown millet and peanuts?

B: Oho, ha'do ka' bu no iri duma.

B: Yes, we sowed last month.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. Literally, ha'do ka' ga kay means "the month which is coming"; kay 'to step' is used only in this expression to replace ka 'to come.' Ha'de ka' bu means "the month which died."
2. Borrowed from the French potage de terre.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. I fo no Bakari ga duma i'ga farey ra?  
2. I fo no Abdu ga duma i'ga farey ra?  
3. I fo no Maman ga duma i'ga farey ra?  
4. I fo no Yakuba ga duma i'ga farey ra?

- A. 1. What does Bakari sow in his fields?  
2. What does Abdu sow in his fields?  
3. What does Maman sow in his fields?  
4. What does Yakuba sow in his fields?

- B. 1. I fo ne ni ga duma ni farey ra?  
2. I fo ne aran ga duma aran farey ra?  
3. I fo ne a ga duma i'ga farey ra?  
4. I fo ne i ga duma i'gey farey ra?

- B. 1. What do you sow in your fields?  
2. What do you sow in your fields?  
3. What does he sow in his fields?  
4. What do they sow in their fields?

- C. 1. I fo no Bakari ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?  
2. I fo no Abdu ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?  
3. I fo ne Maman ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?  
4. I fo no Yakuba ga si'dyi i'ga farey ra?

- C. 1. What does Bakari plant in his fields?  
2. What does Abdu plant in his fields?  
3. What does Maman plant in his fields?  
4. What does Yakuba plant in his fields?

- D. 1. I fe ne ni ga si'dyi ni farey  
-ra?  
2. I fe ne aran ga si'dyi aran  
farey ra?  
3. I fe ne a ga si'dyi i'ga farey  
ra?  
4. I fe ne i ga si'dyi i'gay farey  
ra?

- E. 1. Hayni no ay ga duma.  
2. Dansi no ay ga duma.  
3. Kelketi no ay ga duma.

- F. 1. Hayni ne iri ga duma.  
2. Dansi ne iri ga duma.  
3. Kelketi ne iri ga duma.

- G. 1. Hayni ne a ga duma.  
2. Dansi ne a ga duma.  
3. Kelketi ne a ga duma.

- H. 1. Hayni ne i ga duma.  
2. Dansi ne i ga duma.  
3. Kelketi ne i ga duma.

- I. 1. Kelketi ne  
ay ga duma.  
2. Dansi nda kelketi ne  
ay ga duma.  
3. Hayni nda dansi nda kelketi ne  
ay ga duma.

- D. 1. What do you plant in your  
fields?  
2. What do you plant in your  
fields?  
3. What does he plant in his  
fields?  
4. What do they plant in their  
fields?

- E. 1. I sow millet.  
2. I sow peanuts.  
3. I sow maize.

- F. 1. We sow millet.  
2. We sow peanuts.  
3. We sow maize.

- G. 1. He sows millet.  
2. He sows peanuts.  
3. He sows maize.

- H. 1. They sow millet.  
2. They sow peanuts.  
3. They sow maize.

- I. 1. I sow maize.  
2. I sow peanuts and maize.  
3. I sow millet, peanuts, and  
maize.

- J. 1. Kolkoti no  
iri ga duma.
2. Dansi nda kolkoti no  
iri ga duma.
3. Hayni nda damai nda kolkoti no  
iri ga duma.

- K. 1. Rege no ay ga si'dyi.
2. Kudaku no ay ga si'dyi.
3. Pe'piter no ay ga si'dyi.

- L. 1. Rege no iri ga si'dyi.
2. Kudaku no iri ga si'dyi.
3. Pe'piter no iri ga si'dyi.

- M. 1. Rege no a ga si'dyi.
2. Kudaku no a ga si'dyi.
3. Pe'piter no a ga si'dyi.

- N. 1. Rege no i ga si'dyi.
2. Kudaku no i ga si'dyi.
3. Pe'piter no i ga si'dyi.

- O. 1. Pe'piter  
no ay ga si'dyi.
2. Kudaku nda pe'piter  
no ay ga si'dyi.
3. Rogo nda kudaku nda pe'piter  
no ay ga si'dyi.

- P. 1. Pe'piter  
no iri ga si'dyi.
2. Kudaku nda pe'piter  
no iri ga si'dyi.
3. Rogo nda kudaku nda pe'piter  
no iri ga si'dyi.

- J. 1. We sow maize.
2. We sow peanuts and maize.
3. We sow millet, peanuts, and  
maize.

- K. 1. I plant cassava.
2. I plant sweet potatoes.
3. I plant potatoes.

- L. 1. We plant cassava.
2. We plant sweet potatoes.
3. We plant potatoes.

- M. 1. He plants cassava.
2. He plants sweet potatoes.
3. He plants potatoes.

- N. 1. They plant cassava.
2. They plant sweet potatoes.
3. They plant potatoes.

- O. 1. I plant potatoes.
2. I plant sweet potatoes and  
potatoes.
3. I plant cassava, sweet potatoes,  
and potatoes.

- P. 1. We plant potatoes.
2. We plant sweet potatoes and  
potatoes.
3. We plant cassava, sweet potatoes,  
and potatoes.

- Q. 1. Wati fo no ni ga hayni duma?  
 2. Wati fo no aran ga hayni duma?  
 3. Wati fo no a ga hayni duma?  
 4. Wati fo no i ga hayni duma?

- Q. 1. When will you sow millet?  
 2. When will you sow millet?  
 3. When will he sow millet?  
 4. When will they sow millet?

- R. 1. Wati fo no ni ga damsi duma?  
 2. Wati fo no aran ga damsi duma?  
 3. Wati fo no a ga damsi duma?  
 4. Wati fo no i ga damsi duma?

- R. 1. When will you sow peanuts?  
 2. When will you sow peanuts?  
 3. When will he sow peanuts?  
 4. When will they sow peanuts?

- S. 1. Wati fo no ni ga kolkoti duma?  
 2. Wati fo no aran ga kolkoti duma?  
 3. Wati fo no a ga kolkoti duma?  
 4. Wati fo no i ga kolkoti duma?

- S. 1. When will you sow maize?  
 2. When will you sow maize?  
 3. When will he sow maize?  
 4. When will they sow maize?

- T. 1. Wati fo no ni ga roge si'dyi?  
 2. Wati fo no aran ga roge si'dyi?  
 3. Wati fo no a ga roge si'dyi?  
 4. Wati fo no i ga roge si'dyi?

- T. 1. When will you plant cassava?  
 2. When will you plant cassava?  
 3. When will he plant cassava?  
 4. When will they plant cassava?

- U. 1. Wati fo no ni ga kudaku  
 si'dyi?  
 2. Wati fo no aran ga kudaku  
 si'dyi?  
 3. Wati fo no a ga kudaku  
 si'dyi?  
 4. Wati fo no i ga kudaku  
 si'dyi?

- U. 1. When will you plant sweet po-  
 tatoes?  
 2. When will you plant sweet po-  
 tatoes?  
 3. When will he plant sweet pota-  
 toes?  
 4. When will they plant sweet po-  
 tatoes?

- V. 1. Wati fo no ni ga po'piter  
 si'dyi?  
 2. Wati fo no aran ga po'piter  
 si'dyi?

- V. 1. When will you plant potatoes?  
 2. When will you plant potatoes?

3. Wati fo no a ga po'piter  
si'dyi?

4. Wati fo no i ga po'piter  
si'dyi?

3. When will he plant potatoes?

4. When will they plant potatoes?

### Phonology Drills

ga

A. 1. Ay na Abdu ga farmi.

ga

2. Hawey go ga.

ga

3. Suba ay ga naru.

ga

4. Ni ga no ay go.

garu

B. 1. Abdu na garu di.

garu

2. Maman na garu tyina.

goro

C. 1. Goro ga ma!

goro

2. Ay no goro.

goru

D. 1. Lokotoro na ay goru.

to help

A. 1. I helped Abdu farm.

enclosure (for animals)  
(indef.)

2. The cows are in the enclosure.

(sign of the Future)

3. I'll travel tomorrow.

to, on

4. I'm talking to you.

crow (indef.)

B. 1. Abdu caught a crow.

banco house (indef.)

2. Maman built a banco house.

sit down!

C. 1. Sit down and listen!

cola nut (indef.)

2. Give me a cola nut.

to prick, stab

D. 1. The doctor inoculated me.

gōru

2. Gōru go ni dyini.

gōru

3. Hamo gōru kuso ra.

gusu

E. 1. Ay tya ka' gusu ra.

gūsu

2. Aran deyo ga gūsu.

valley (indef.)

2. The valley is in front of you.

to increase above normal

3. The meat in the pot has increased.

hole (indef.)

E. 1. My foot fell into a hole.

deep (def./indef. sg.)

2. Your well is deep.

UNIT 17

Structural Drills

- A. 1. Ni na rogo si'dyi?  
 2. Ni na kudaku si'dyi?  
 3. Ni na po'piter si'dyi?

- B. 1. Aran na rogo si'dyi?  
 2. Aran na kudaku si'dyi?  
 3. Aran na po'piter si'dyi?

- C. 1. A na rogo si'dyi?  
 2. A na kudaku si'dyi?  
 3. A na po'piter si'dyi?

- D. 1. I na rogo si'dyi?  
 2. I na kudaku si'dyi?  
 3. I na po'piter si'dyi?

- E. 1. Ni na hayni duma?  
 2. Ni na damsi duma?  
 3. Ni na kolkoti duma?

- F. 1. Aran na hayni duma?  
 2. Aran na damsi duma?  
 3. Aran na kolkoti duma?

- G. 1. A na hayni duma?  
 2. A na damsi duma?  
 3. A na kolkoti duma?

- H. 1. I na hayni duma?  
 2. I na damsi duma?  
 3. I na kolkoti duma?

- A. 1. Have you planted cassava?  
 2. Have you planted sweet potatoes?  
 3. Have you planted potatoes?

- B. 1. Have you planted cassava?  
 2. Have you planted sweet potatoes?  
 3. Have you planted potatoes?

- C. 1. Has he planted cassava?  
 2. Has he planted sweet potatoes?  
 3. Has he planted potatoes?

- D. 1. Have they planted cassava?  
 2. Have they planted sweet potatoes?  
 3. Have they planted potatoes?

- E. 1. Have you sown millet?  
 2. Have you sown peanuts?  
 3. Have you sown maize?

- F. 1. Have you sown millet?  
 2. Have you sown peanuts?  
 3. Have you sown maize?

- G. 1. Has he sown millet?  
 2. Has he sown peanuts?  
 3. Has he sown maize?

- H. 1. Have they sown millet?  
 2. Have they sown peanuts?  
 3. Have they sown maize?

I. 1. Ha'de ka' ga kay no ay ga  
duma.

2. Ha'de ka' ga kay no iri ga  
duma.

3. Ha'do ka' ga kay no a ga  
duma.

4. Ha'de ka' ga kay no i ga  
duma.

J. 1. Ha'de ka' ga kay no ay ga  
si'dyi.

2. Ha'do ka' ga kay no iri ga  
si'dyi.

3. Ha'de ka' ga kay no a ga  
si'dyi.

4. Ha'do ka' ga kay no i ga  
si'dyi.

K. 1. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Bakari  
ga duma.

2. Ha'de ka' ga kay no Abdu  
ga duma.

3. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Maman  
ga duma.

4. Ha'de ka' ga kay no Yakuba  
ga duma.

L. 1. Ha'de ka' ga kay no Bakari  
ga si'dyi.

2. Ha'de ka' ga kay no Abdu  
ga si'dyi.

3. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Maman  
ga si'dyi.

4. Ha'do ka' ga kay no Yakuba  
ga si'dyi.

I. 1. I'll sow next month.

2. We'll sow next month.

3. He'll sow next month.

4. They'll sow next month.

J. 1. I'll plant next month.

2. We'll plant next month.

3. He'll plant next month.

4. They'll plant next month.

K. 1. Bakari will sow next month.

2. Abdu will sow next month.

3. Maman will sow next month.

4. Yakuba will sow next month.

L. 1. Bakari will plant next month.

2. Abdu will plant next month.

3. Maman will plant next month.

4. Yakuba will plant next month.

- M. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no ay duma.  
 2. Ha'do ka' bu no iri duma.  
 3. Ha'do ka' bu no a duma.  
 4. Ha'do ka' bu no i duma.

- N. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no ay si'dyi.  
 2. Ha'do ka' bu no iri si'dyi.  
 3. Ha'do ka' bu no a si'dyi.  
 4. Ha'do ka' bu no i si'dyi.

- O. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no Bakari duma.  
 2. Ha'do ka' bu no Abdu duma.  
 3. Ha'do ka' bu no Maman duma.  
 4. Ha'do ka' bu no Yakuba duma.

- P. 1. Ha'do ka' bu no Bakari si'dyi.  
 2. Ha'do ka' bu no Abdu si'dyi.  
 3. Ha'do ka' bu no Maman si'dyi.  
 4. Ha'do ka' bu no Yakuba si'dyi.

- Q. 1. Ni ga hayni bobo duma?  
 2. Aran ga hayni bobo duma?  
 3. A ga hayni bobo duma?  
 4. I ga hayni bobo duma?

- R. 1. Ni ga damsi bobo duma?  
 2. Aran ga damsi bobo duma?  
 3. A ga damsi bobo duma?  
 4. I ga damsi bobo duma?

- S. 1. Ni ga kolkoti bobo duma?  
 2. Aran ga kolkoti bobo duma?  
 3. A ga kolkoti bobo duma?  
 4. I ga kolkoti bobo duma?

- M. 1. I sowed last month.  
 2. We sowed last month.  
 3. He sowed last month.  
 4. They sowed last month.

- N. 1. I planted last month.  
 2. We planted last month.  
 3. He planted last month.  
 4. They planted last month.

- O. 1. Bakari sowed last month.  
 2. Abdu sowed last month.  
 3. Maman sowed last month.  
 4. Yakuba sowed last month.

- P. 1. Bakari planted last month.  
 2. Abdu planted last month.  
 3. Maman planted last month.  
 4. Yakuba planted last month.

- Q. 1. Do you sow a lot of millet?  
 2. Do you sow a lot of millet?  
 3. Does he sow a lot of millet?  
 4. Do they sow a lot of millet?

- R. 1. Do you sow a lot of peanuts?  
 2. Do you sow a lot of peanuts?  
 3. Does he sow a lot of peanuts?  
 4. Do they sow a lot of peanuts?

- S. 1. Do you sow a lot of maize?  
 2. Do you sow a lot of maize?  
 3. Does he sow a lot of maize?  
 4. Do they sow a lot of maize?

T. 1. Ni ga hayni kayna duma?

2. Aran ga hayni kayna duma?

3. A ga hayni kayna duma?

4. I ga hayni kayna duma?

U. 1. Ni ga damsi kayna duma?

2. Aran ga damsi kayna duma?

3. A ga damsi kayna duma?

4. I ga damsi kayna duma?

V. 1. Ni ga kolkoti kayna duma?

2. Aran ga kolkoti kayna duma?

3. A ga kolkoti kayna duma?

4. I ga kolkoti kayna duma?

W. 1. Ni ga rogo bobo si'dyi?

2. Aran ga rogo bobo si'dyi?

3. A ga rogo bobo si'dyi?

4. I ga rogo bobo si'dyi?

1. 1. Do you sow (only) a little millet?

2. Do you sow (only) a little millet?

3. Does he sow (only) a little millet?

4. Do they sow (only) a little millet?

U. 1. Do you sow (only) a little peanuts?

2. Do you sow (only) a little peanuts?

3. Does he sow (only) a little peanuts?

4. Do they sow (only) a little peanuts?

V. 1. Do you sow (only) a little maize?

2. Do you sow (only) a little maize?

3. Does he sow (only) a little maize?

4. Do they sow (only) a little maize?

W. 1. Do you plant a lot of cassava?

2. Do you plant a lot of cassava?

3. Does he plant a lot of cassava?

4. Do they plant a lot of cassava?

X. 1. Ni ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?

2. Aran ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?

3. A ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?

4. I ga kudaku bobo si'dyi?

Y. 1. Ni ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?

2. Aran ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?

3. A ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?

4. I ga po'piter bobo si'dyi?

Z. 1. Ni ga rogo kayna si'dyi?

2. Aran ga rogo kayna si'dyi?

3. A ga rogo kayna si'dyi?

4. I ga rogo kayna si'dyi?

AA. 1. Ni ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?

2. Aran ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?

3. A ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?

4. I ga kudaku kayna si'dyi?

BB. 1. Ni ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?

2. Aran ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?

X. 1. Do you plant a lot of sweet potatoes?

2. Do you plant a lot of sweet potatoes?

3. Does he plant a lot of sweet potatoes?

4. Do they plant a lot of sweet potatoes?

Y. 1. Do you plant a lot of potatoes?

2. Do you plant a lot of potatoes?

3. Does he plant a lot of potatoes?

4. Do they plant a lot of potatoes?

Z. 1. Do you plant (only) a little cassava?

2. Do you plant (only) a little cassava?

3. Does he plant (only) a little cassava?

4. Do they plant (only) a little cassava?

AA. 1. Do you plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?

2. Do you plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?

3. Does he plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?

4. Do they plant (only) a little sweet potatoes?

BB. 1. Do you plant (only) a little potatoes?

2. Do you plant (only) a little potatoes?

3. A ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?

3. Does he plant (only) a little potatoes?

4. I ga po'piter kayna si'dyi?

4. Do they plant (only) a little potatoes?

CC. 1. Hayni bobo no ay ga duma.

CC. 1. I sow a lot of millet.

2. Hayni bobo no iri ga duma.

2. We sow a lot of millet.

3. Hayni bobo no a ga duma.

3. He sows a lot of millet.

4. Hayni bobo no i ga duma.

4. They sow a lot of millet.

DD. 1. Damsi bobo no ay ga duma.

DD. 1. I sow a lot of peanuts.

2. Damsi bobo no iri ga duma.

2. We sow a lot of peanuts.

3. Damsi bobo no a ga duma.

3. He sows a lot of peanuts.

4. Damsi bobo no i ga duma.

4. They sow a lot of peanuts.

EE. 1. Kolkoti bobo no ay ga duma.

EE. 1. I sow a lot of maize.

2. Kolkoti bobo no iri ga duma.

2. We sow a lot of maize.

3. Kolkoti bobo no a ga duma.

3. He sows a lot of maize.

4. Kolkoti bobo no i ga duma.

4. They sow a lot of maize.

FF. 1. Hayni kayna no ay ga duma.

FF. 1. I sow (only) a little millet.

2. Hayni kayna no iri ga duma.

2. We sow (only) a little millet.

3. Hayni kayna no a ga duma.

3. He sows (only) a little millet.

4. Hayni kayna no i ga duma.

4. They sow (only) a little millet.

GG. 1. Damsi kayna no ay ga duma.

GG. 1. I sow (only) a little peanuts.

2. Damsi kayna no iri ga duma.

2. We sow (only) a little peanuts.

3. Damsi kayna no a ga duma.

3. He sows (only) a little peanuts.

4. Damsi kayna no i ga duma.

4. They sow (only) a little peanuts.

HH. 1. Kolkoti kayna no ay ga duma.

HH. 1. I sow (only) a little maize.

2. Kolkoti kayna no iri ga duma.

2. We sow (only) a little maize.

3. Kolkoti kayna no a ga duma.

3. He sows (only) a little maize.

4. Kolkoti kayna no i ga duma.

4. They sow (only) a little maize.

- II. 1. Rogo bobo no ay ga si'dyi.  
 2. Rege bebo no iri ga si'dyi.  
 3. Rege bobo no a ga si'dyi.  
 4. Rogo bobo no i ga si'dyi.

- JJ. 1. Kudaku bobo no ay ga si'dyi.  
 2. Kudaku bobo no iri ga si'dyi.  
 3. Kudaku bebo no a ga si'dyi.  
 4. Kudaku bobo no i ga si'dyi.

- KK. 1. Pe'piter bobo no ay ga si'dyi.  
 2. Pe'piter bobo no iri ga si'dyi.  
 3. Pe'piter bebo no a ga si'dyi.  
 4. Pe'piter bebo no i ga si'dyi.

- LL. 1. Rogo kayna no ay ga si'dyi.  
 2. Rege kayna no iri ga si'dyi.  
 3. Rogo kayna no a ga si'dyi.  
 4. Rogo kayna no i ga si'dyi.

- MM. 1. Kudaku kayna no ay ga si'dyi.  
 2. Kudaku kayna no iri ga si'dyi.  
 3. Kudaku kayna no a ga si'dyi.  
 4. Kudaku kayna no i ga si'dyi.

- II. 1. I plant a lot of cassava.  
 2. We plant a lot of cassava.  
 3. He plants a lot of cassava.  
 4. They plant a lot of cassava.

- JJ. 1. I plant a lot of sweet potatoes.  
 2. We plant a lot of sweet potatoes.  
 3. He plants a lot of sweet potatoes.  
 4. They plant a lot of sweet potatoes.

- KK. 1. I plant a lot of potatoes.  
 2. We plant a lot of potatoes.  
 3. He plants a lot of potatoes.  
 4. They plant a lot of potatoes.

- LL. 1. I plant (only) a little cassava.  
 2. We plant (only) a little cassava.  
 3. He plants (only) a little cassava.  
 4. They plant (only) a little cassava.

- MM. 1. I plant (only) a little sweet potatoes.  
 2. We plant (only) a little sweet potatoes.  
 3. He plants (only) a little sweet potatoes.  
 4. They plant (only) a little sweet potatoes.

- NN. 1. Po'piter kayna no ay ga  
si'dyi.  
2. Po'piter kayna no iri ga  
si'dyi.  
3. Po'piter kayna no a ga  
si'dyi.  
4. Po'piter kayna no i ga  
si'dyi.

- NN. 1. I plant (only) a little pota-  
toes.  
2. We plant (only) a little po-  
tatoes.  
3. He plants (only) a little po-  
tatoes.  
4. They plant (only) a little  
potatoes.

### Phonology Drills

fiti

- A. 1. Musa na tyuro fiti ka.

fiti

2. Ay no fuwo fiti.

faru

- B. 1. Bibata na hayno faru.

faru

2. Adamu na i'ga zama faru.

fa'du

- C. 1. Sa'bu'fa'du ga ay feni.

fā'du

2. Ni fuwo go fā'du bo'.

fo

- D. 1. Fo Abdu.

fo

2. Ay fo no.

nest (indef.)

- A. 1. Musa took away a bird's nest.

to open

2. I opened the house.

to separate grains from chaff

- B. 1. Eibata separated the grains  
from the chaff.

to sharpen a tool

2. Adamu sharpened his knife.

fan (indef.)

- C. 1. Take the fan and fan me.

dune (indef.)

2. Your house is on a dune.

to greet

- D. 1. Say hello to Abdu.

alone, one

2. I'm alone.

fo  
3. Wa fo nda tilas.

fo  
4. Wofo ga ti Abdu wone?

foy  
E. 1. Mamata na foy hina.

foy  
2. Ay foy Tilaberi bi.

foy  
3. Ay na Abdu foy.

zi  
F. 1. Bariyo na Abdu zi.

zi  
2. Amina go ga zi isa ra.

to offer condolence  
3. My condolences.

which one  
4. Which one is Abdu's?

sauce (indef.)  
E. 1. Mamata cooked the sauce.

to spend the day  
2. I spent the day at Tilaberi  
yesterday.

to reproach  
3. I reproached Abdu.

to kick  
F. 1. The horse kicked Abdu.

to swim  
2. Amina is swimming in the river.

UNIT 18  
Dialogue 1

son'o  
kaydiya

A: Son'o kaydiya no?

B: Ha'a.

hayni

wala  
dyew

A: Son'o hayni no wala dyew?

B: Son'o hayni no.

hayno

si'tin

A: Wati fo no hayno si'tin?

ha'du

B: Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a si'tin.

ban

A: Wati fo no hayno ga ban?

B: Ha'du fo ra a ga ban.

now

rainy season (def./indef.)

A: Is it the rainy season now?

B: No.

the hot part of the dry  
season (indef.)

or

the cold part of the dry  
season (indef.)

A: Is it the hot part or the cold  
part of the dry season now?

B: It's the hot part of the dry  
season now.

the hot part of the dry  
season (def.)

to begin

A: When did the hot part of the dry  
season begin?

month (indef.)

B: It began two months ago.

to end

A: When will the hot part of the dry  
season end?

B: It will end in one month.

## Dialogue 2

dyewo

the cold part of the dry  
season (def.)

A: Wati fo ne dyewo si'tin?

A: When did the cold part of the  
dry season begin?

B: Ha'du fo ne ka' a si'tin.

B: It began one month ago.

A: Wati fe ne dyewo ga ban?

A: When will the cold part of the  
dry season end?

B: Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga ban.

B: It will end in two months.

## Dialogue 3

A: Wati fe ne hayne ban?

A: When did the hot part of the dry  
season end?

B: Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a ban.

B: It ended two months ago.

## Dialogue 4

A: Wati fe ne hayno ga si'tin?

A: When will the hot part of the dry  
season begin?

B: Ha'du fe ra a ga si'tin.

B: It will begin in one month.

## Structural Drills

A. 1. Son'oe kaydiya no?

A. 1. Is it the rainy season now?

2. Son'oe hayni no?

2. Is it the hot part of the dry  
season now?

3. Son'oe dyew no?

3. Is it the cold part of the  
dry season now?

B. 1. Son'o kaydiya no wala  
hayni?

2. Son'o hayni no wala  
dyew?

3. Son'o dyew no wala kay-  
diya?

C. 1. Son'o kaydiya no.

2. Son'o hayni no.

3. Son'o dyew no.

D. 1. Son'o kaydiya no wala  
hayni?

Son'o kaydiya no.

2. Son'o kaydiya no wala  
hayni?

Son'o hayni no.

3. Son'o hayni no wala dyew?

Son'o hayni no.

4. Son'o hayni no wala dyew?

Son'o dyew no.

5. Son'o dyew no wala kaydiya?

Son'o dyew no.

6. Son'o dyew no wala kaydiya?

Son'o kaydiya no.

B. 1. Is it the rainy season or the hot  
part of the dry season now?

2. Is it the hot part or the cold  
part of the dry season now?

3. Is it the cold part of the dry sea-  
son or the rainy season now?

C. 1. It's the rainy season now.

2. It's the hot part of the dry season  
now.

3. It's the cold part of the dry sea-  
son now.

B. 1. Is it the rainy season or the hot  
part of the dry season now?

It's the rainy season now.

2. Is it the rainy season or the hot  
part of the dry season now?

It's the hot part of the dry season  
now.

3. Is it the hot part or the cold part  
of the dry season now?

It's the hot part of the dry season  
now.

4. Is it the hot part or the cold part  
of the dry season now?

It's the cold part of the dry sea-  
son now.

5. Is it the cold part of the dry sea-  
son or the rainy season now?

It's the cold part of the dry season  
now.

6. Is it the cold part of the dry sea-  
son or the rainy season now?

It's the rainy season now.

- E. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya si'tin?  
 2. Wati fo no hayne si'tin?  
 3. Wati fo no dyewe si'tin?

- E. 1. When did the rainy season begin?  
 2. When did the hot part of the dry season begin?  
 3. When did the cold part of the dry season begin?

- F. 1. Wati fo ne kaydiya ga si'tin?  
 2. Wati fo ne hayne ga si'tin?  
 3. Wati fo ne dyewe ga si'tin?

- F. 1. When will the rainy season begin?  
 2. When will the hot part of the dry season begin?  
 3. When will the cold part of the dry season begin?

- G. 1. Wati fo ne kaydiya ban?  
 2. Wati fo ne hayne ban?  
 3. Wati fo ne dyewe ban?

- G. 1. When did the rainy season end?  
 2. When did the hot part of the dry season end?  
 3. When did the cold part of the dry season end?

- H. 1. Wati fo ne kaydiya ga ban?  
 2. Wati fo ne hayne ga ban?  
 3. Wati fo ne dyewe ga ban?

- H. 1. When will the rainy season end?  
 2. When will the hot part of the dry season end?  
 3. When will the cold part of the dry season end?

- I. 1. Ha'du fe ne ka' a si'tin.  
 2. Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a si'tin.  
 3. Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a si'tin.

- I. 1. It began one month ago.  
 2. It began two months ago.  
 3. It began three months ago.

- J. 1. Ha'du fe ra a ga si'tin.  
 2. Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga si'tin.  
 3. Ha'du hi'za ra a ga si'tin.

- J. 1. It will begin in one month.  
 2. It will begin in two months.  
 3. It will begin in three months.

- K. 1. Ha'du fo ne ka' a ban.  
 2. Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a ban.  
 3. Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a ban.

- K. 1. It ended one month ago.  
 2. It ended two months ago.  
 3. It ended three months ago.

- L. 1. Ha'du fo ra a ga ban.
2. Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga ban.
3. Ha'du hi'za ra a ga ban.

- L. 1. It will end in one month.
2. It will end in two months.
3. It will end in three months.

- M. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya si'tin?  
Ha'du fo ne ka' a si'tin.
2. Wati fo no hayno si'tin?  
Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a si'tin.
3. Wati fo no dyewo si'tin?  
Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a si'tin.

- M. 1. When did the rainy season begin?  
It began one month ago.
2. When did the hot part of the dry season begin?  
It began two months ago.
3. When did the cold part of the dry season begin?  
It began three months ago.

- N. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya ga si'tin?  
Ha'du fo ra a ga si'tin.
2. Wati fo no hayno ga si'tin?  
Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga si'tin.
3. Wati fo no dyewo ga si'tin?  
Ha'du hi'za ra a ga si'tin.

- N. 1. When will the rainy season begin?  
It will begin in one month.
2. When will the hot part of the dry season begin?  
It will begin in two months.
3. When will the cold part of the dry season begin?  
It will begin in three months.

- O. 1. Wati fo no kaydiya ban?  
Ha'du fo ne ka' a ban.
2. Wati fo no hayno ban?  
Ha'du hi'ka ne ka' a ban.
3. Wati fo no dyewo ban?  
Ha'du hi'za ne ka' a ban.

- O. 1. When did the rainy season end?  
It ended one month ago.
2. When did the hot part of the dry season end?  
It ended two months ago.
3. When did the cold part of the dry season end?  
It ended three months ago.

P. 1. Wati fe no kaydiya ga ban?  
Ha'du fe ra a ga ban.

2. Wati fe no hayno ga ban?

Ha'du hi'ka ra a ga ban.

3. Wati fe ne dyewo ga ban?

Ha'du hi'sa ra a ga ban.

P. 1. When will the rainy season end?  
It will end in one month.

2. When will the hot part of the  
dry season end?

It will end in two months.

3. When will the cold part of the  
dry season end?

It will end in three months.

### Phonology Drills

hina

A. 1. Ni hina ga ka.

hina

2. Abdu ga hina Maman.

Hina

3. Hina koy Deso.

hina

B. 1. Amina na hawro hina.

hina

2. Irkoy go'da hina.

hirri

C. 1. Abdu nda Maman farye ne ga  
hirri.

hirri.

2. Ay na kusa hirri.

hirri

3. Bena hirri hu'kuna.

to have to, must

A. 1. You must come.

to resemble

2. Abdu resembles Maman.

Hina (a male proper name)

3. Hina went to Deso.

to cook

B. 1. Amina cooked the porridge.

power (def./indef.)

2. God has power.

adjoining (def./indef. sg.)

C. 1. Abdu and Maman's fields are  
adjoining.

to set (a trap)

2. I set a trap.

to be cloud-covered

3. The sky is covered with clouds  
today.

ham

D. 1. Aysa na ham hina.

ham

2. Ay na de'dyi ham.

hamni

E. 1. Hamni zumbu ni ga.

hamni

2. Bibata go'da hamni bobo.

hamni

3. Hayni hamni ne.

hari

F. 1. Hari, go ga ka!

hari

2. Hari fo no?

hari

3. Nan hari.

meat (indef.)

D. 1. Aysa cocked the meat.

to touch

2. I touched the fire.

fly (indef.)

E. 1. A fly landed on you.

hair (indef.)

2. Bibata has lots of hair.

flour (indef.)

3. There is the millet flour.

water, rain (indef.)

F. 1. Rain is falling.

an object (indef.)

2. What is the object?

to laugh

3. Stop laughing.

UNIT 19

Dialogue 1

haw  
se  
A: Haw mardye no ni se?

iddn  
B: Haw<sup>1</sup> iddn no ay se.

bari  
A: Ni go'da bari?

B: Ha'a, ay si'da bari.  
amma  
ye  
Amma ay go'da yo.

cow (indef.)  
with

A: How many cows do you have?

six  
B: I have six cows.

horse (indef.)  
A: Do you have a horse?

B: No, I don't have a horse.  
but  
camel (indef.)  
But I have a camel.

Dialogue 2

mannan  
gorn'e  
A: Mannan gorn'e mardye no ni se?

eye  
ahakku  
gere  
B: Gorn'e iye wala ahakku no  
gere ay se.

A: Mannan ni gore nda haw ya'?

B: Ha'a, ay mana gore nda haw ya'.  
hi'tyin  
Amma ay gore nda hi'tyin ya'.

last year  
chicken (indef.)

A: How many chickens did you have  
last year?

seven  
eight  
to remain, dwell  
B: I had seven or eight chickens.

A: Did you have cows last year?

B: No, I didn't have cows.  
goat (indef.)  
But I had goats.

### Dialogue 3

yes  
du

A: Yesi bari mardye no ni ga du?

next year  
to have, possess

A: How many horses will you have next year?

yegga  
woy

B: Bari yegga wala i<sup>2</sup> woy no ay ga du.

nine  
ten

B: I'll have nine or ten horses.

A: Yesi ni ga du hi'tyin ya'?

A: Will you have goats next year?

B: Ha'a, ay si du hi'tyin ya'.  
fedyi

B: No, I won't have goats.  
sheep (indef. sg.)

Amma ay ga du fedyi ya'.

But I'll have sheep.

### Dialogue 4

A: Yesi bari mardye no ni ga du?

A: How many horses will you have next year?

B: Bari woy no ay ga du.

B: I'll have ten horses.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. Like adjectives, numbers follow the noun, which takes the indefinite form. With numbers the noun also retains the singular form.
2. When separated from the noun it modifies, woy 'ten' must be preceded by i.

### Structural Drills

1. Haw mardye no ni se?
2. Bari mardye no ni se?
3. Ye mardye no ni se?

1. How many cows do you have?
2. How many horses do you have?
3. How many camels do you have?

- B. 1. Gorn'o mardye no aran se?
2. Hi'tyin mardye no aran se?
3. Fedyi mardye no aran se?

- C. 1. Haw mardye no a se?
2. Bari mardye no a se?
3. Yo mardye no a se?

- D. 1. Gorn'o mardye no i se?
2. Hi'tyin mardye no i se?
3. Fedyi mardye no i se?

- E. 1. Mannan haw mardye no ni se?
2. Mannan bari mardye no ni se?
3. Mannan yo mardye, no ni se?

- F. 1. Mannan gorn'o mardye no aran se?
2. Mannan hi'tyin mardye no aran se?
3. Mannan fedyi mardye no aran se?

- G. 1. Mannan haw mardye no a se?
2. Mannan bari mardye no a se?
3. Mannan yo mardye no a se?

- B. 1. How many chickens do you have?
2. How many goats do you have?
3. How many sheep do you have?

- C. 1. How many cows does he have?
2. How many horses does he have?
3. How many camels does he have?

- D. 1. How many chickens do they have?
2. How many goats do they have?
3. How many sheep do they have?

- E. 1. How many cows did you have last year?
2. How many horses did you have last year?
3. How many camels did you have last year?

- F. 1. How many chickens did you have last year?
2. How many goats did you have last year?
3. How many sheep did you have last year?

- G. 1. How many cows did he have last year?
2. How many horses did he have last year?
3. How many camels did he have last year?

H. 1. Mannan gorn'o mardye ne i se?

2. Mannan hi'tyin mardye ne i se?

3. Mannan fedyi mardye ne i se?

I. 1. Yesi haw mardye ne ni ga du?

2. Yesi bari mardye ne ni ga du?

3. Yesi ye mardye ne ni ga du?

J. 1. Yesi gorn'o mardye ne aran ga du?

2. Yesi hi'tyin mardye ne aran ga du?

3. Yesi fedyi mardye no aran ga du?

K. 1. Yesi haw mardye no a ga du?

2. Yesi bari mardye no a ga du?

3. Yesi ye mardye no a ga du?

L. 1. Yesi gorn'o mardye ne i ga du?

2. Yesi hi'tyin mardye no i ga du?

3. Yesi fedyi mardye no i ga du?

H. 1. How many chickens did they have last year?

2. How many goats did they have last year?

3. How many sheep did they have last year?

I. 1. How many cows will you have next year?

2. How many horses will you have next year?

3. How many camels will you have next year?

J. 1. How many chickens will you have next year?

2. How many goats will you have next year?

3. How many sheep will you have next year?

K. 1. How many cows will he have next year?

2. How many horses will he have next year?

3. How many camels will he have next year?

L. 1. How many chickens will they have next year?

2. How many goats will they have next year?

3. How many sheep will they have next year?

<u>fo</u>	'one'	<u>iddu</u>	'six'
<u>hi'ka</u>	'two'	<u>iye</u>	'seven'
<u>hi'za</u>	'three'	<u>ahakku</u>	'eight'
<u>tatyi</u>	'four'	<u>yegga</u>	'nine'
<u>gu</u>	'five'	<u>woy</u>	'ten'

M. 1. Haw iddu no ay se.

2. Haw iye no ay se.

3. Haw ahakku no ay se.

N. 1. Bari ahakku no iri se.

2. Bari yegga no iri se.

3. Bari woy no iri se.

O. 1. Yo iddu no a se.

2. Yo iye no a se.

3. Yo ahakku no a se.

P. 1. Gorn'o ahakku no i se.

2. Gorn'o yegga no i se.

3. Gorn'o woy no i se.

Q. 1. Hi'tyin iddu no goro ay se.

2. Hi'tyin iye no goro ay se.

3. Hi'tyin ahakku no goro ay se.

R. 1. Fedyi ahakku no goro iri se.

2. Fedyi yegga no goro iri se.

3. Fedyi woy no goro iri se.

S. 1. Haw iddu no goro a se.

2. Haw iye no goro a se.

3. Haw ahakku no goro a se.

T. 1. Bari ahakku no goro i se.

2. Bari yegga no goro i se.

3. Bari woy no goro i se.

M. 1. I have six cows.

2. I have seven cows.

3. I have eight cows.

N. 1. We have eight horses.

2. We have nine horses.

3. We have ten horses.

O. 1. He has six camels.

2. He has seven camels.

3. He has eight camels.

P. 1. They have eight chickens.

2. They have nine chickens.

3. They have ten chickens.

Q. 1. I had six goats.

2. I had seven goats.

3. I had eight goats.

R. 1. We had eight sheep.

2. We had nine sheep.

3. We had ten sheep.

S. 1. He had six cows.

2. He had seven cows.

3. He had eight cows.

T. 1. They had eight horses.

2. They had nine horses.

3. They had ten horses.

- U. 1. Yo iddu ne ay ga du.  
 2. Yo iye no ay ga du.  
 3. Yo ahakku no ay ga du.

- V. 1. Gorn'o ahakku no iri ga du.  
 2. Gorn'o yegga no iri ga du.  
 3. Gorn'o woy no iri ga du.

- W. 1. Hi'tyin iddu no a ga du.  
 2. Hi'tyin iye no a ga du.  
 3. Hi'tyin ahakku no a ga du.

- X. 1. Fedyi ahakku no i ga du.  
 2. Fedyi yegga no i ga du.  
 3. Fedyi woy no i ga du.

- Y. 1. Haw iddu wala iye no goro  
 ay se.  
 2. Haw iye wala ahakku no goro  
 ay se.  
 3. Haw ahakku wala yegga no goro  
 ay se.  
 4. Haw yegga wala i woy no goro  
 ay se.

- Z. 1. Bari iddu wala iye no iri  
 ga du.  
 2. Bari iye wala ahakku no iri  
 ga du.  
 3. Bari ahakku wala yegga no iri  
 ga du.  
 4. Bari yegga wala i woy no iri  
 ga du.

- AA. 1. Mannan ni goro nda haw ja'?  
 2. Mannan ni goro nda bari ja'?  
 3. Mannan ni goro nda yo ja'?

- U. 1. I'll have six camels.  
 2. I'll have seven camels.  
 3. I'll have eight camels.

- V. 1. We'll have eight chickens.  
 2. We'll have nine chickens.  
 3. We'll have ten chickens.

- W. 1. He'll have six goats.  
 2. He'll have seven goats.  
 3. He'll have eight goats.

- X. 1. They'll have eight sheep.  
 2. They'll have nine sheep.  
 3. They'll have ten sheep.

- Y. 1. I had six or seven cows.  
 2. I had seven or eight cows.  
 3. I had eight or nine cows.  
 4. I had nine or ten cows.

- Z. 1. We'll have six or seven horses.  
 2. We'll have seven or eight hor-  
 ses.  
 3. We'll have eight or nine hor-  
 ses.  
 4. We'll have nine or ten horses.

- AA. 1. Did you have cows last year?  
 2. Did you have horses last year?  
 3. Did you have camels last year?

BB. 1. Mannan aran goro nda gorn'o ya'?

2. Mannan aran goro nda hi'tyin ya'?

3. Mannan aran goro nda fedyi ya'?

CC. 1. Mannan a goro nda haw ya'?

2. Mannan a goro nda bari ya'?

3. Mannan a goro nda yo ya'?

DD. 1. Mannan i goro nda gorn'o ya'?

2. Mannan i goro nda hi'tyin ya'?

3. Mannan i goro nda fedyi ya'?

EE. 1. Yesi ni ga du haw ya'?

2. Yesi ni ga du bari ya'?

3. Yesi ni ga du yo ya'?

FF. 1. Yesi aran ga du gorn'o ya'?

2. Yesi aran ga du hi'tyin ya'?

3. Yesi aran ga du fedyi ya'?

GG. 1. Yesi a ga du haw ya'?

2. Yesi a ga du bari ya'?

3. Yesi a ga du yo ya'?

HH. 1. Yesi i ga du gorn'o ya'?

2. Yesi i ga du hi'tyin ya'?

3. Yesi i ga du fedyi ya'?

BB. 1. Did you have chickens last year?

2. Did you have goats last year?

3. Did you have sheep last year?

CC. 1. Did he have cows last year?

2. Did he have horses last year?

3. Did he have camels last year?

DD. 1. Did they have chickens last year?

2. Did they have goats last year?

3. Did they have sheep last year?

EE. 1. Will you have cows next year?

2. Will you have horses next year?

3. Will you have camels next year?

FF. 1. Will you have chickens next year?

2. Will you have goats next year?

3. Will you have sheep next year?

GG. 1. Will he have cows next year?

2. Will he have horses next year?

3. Will he have camels next year?

HH. 1. Will they have chickens next year?

2. Will they have goats next year?

3. Will they have sheep next year?

- II. 1. Ha'a, ay mana goro nda haw.  
 2. Ha'a, ay mana goro nda bari.  
 3. Ha'a, ay mana goro nda yo.

- II. 1. No, I didn't have a cow.  
 2. No, I didn't have a horse.  
 3. No, I didn't have a camel.

- JJ. 1. Ha'a, iri mana goro nda  
gorn'o ya'.  
 2. Ha'a, iri mana goro nda  
hi'tyin ya'.  
 3. Ha'a, iri mana goro nda  
fedyi ya'.

- JJ. 1. No, we didn't have chickens.  
 2. No, we didn't have goats.  
 3. No, we didn't have sheep.

- KK. 1. Ha'a, a mana goro nda haw  
 ya'.  
 2. Ha'a, a mana goro nda bari  
 ya'.  
 3. Ha'a, a mana goro nda yo  
 ya'.

- KK. 1. No, he didn't have cows.  
 2. No, he didn't have horses.  
 3. No, he didn't have camels.

- LL. 1. Ha'a, i mana goro nda  
gorn'o ya'.  
 2. Ha'a, i mana goro nda  
hi'tyin ya'.  
 3. Ha'a, i mana goro nda  
fedyi ya'.

- LL. 1. No, they didn't have chickens.  
 2. No, they didn't have goats.  
 3. No, they didn't have sheep.

- MM. 1. Ha'a, ay si du haw.  
 2. Ha'a, ay si du bari.  
 3. Ha'a, ay si du yo.

- MM. 1. No, I won't have a cow.  
 2. No, I won't have a horse.  
 3. No, I won't have a camel.

- NN. 1. Ha'a, iri si du gorn'o ya'.  
 2. Ha'a, iri si du hi'tyin ya'.  
 3. Ha'a, iri si du fedyi ya'.

- NN. 1. No, we won't have chickens.  
 2. No, we won't have goats.  
 3. No, we won't have sheep.

- OO. 1. Ha'a, a si du haw ya'.
2. Ha'a, a si du bari ya'.
3. Ha'a, a si du yo ya'.

- OO. 1. No, he won't have cows.
2. No, he won't have horses.
3. No, he won't have camels.

- PP. 1. Ha'a, i si du gorn'o ya'.
2. Ha'a, i si du hi'tyin ya'.
3. Ha'a, i si du fedyi ya'.

- PP. 1. No, they won't have chickens.
2. No, they won't have goats.
3. No, they won't have sheep.

- QQ. 1. Anna ay goro nda haw.
2. Anna ay goro nda bari.
3. Anna ay goro nda yo.

- QQ. 1. But I had a cow.
2. But I had a horse.
3. But I had a camel.

- RR. 1. Anna iri goro nda gorn'o  
ya'.
2. Anna iri goro nda hi'-  
tyin ya'.
3. Anna iri goro nda fedyi  
ya'.

- RR. 1. But we had chickens.
2. But we had goats.
3. But we had sheep.

- SS. 1. Anna a goro nda haw ya'.
2. Anna a goro nda bari ya'.
3. Anna a goro nda yo ya'.

- SS. 1. But he had cows.
2. But he had horses.
3. But he had camels.

- TT. 1. Anna i goro nda gorn'o ya'.
2. Anna i goro nda hi'tyin ya'.
3. Anna i goro nda fedyi ya'.

- TT. 1. But they had chickens.
2. But they had goats.
3. But they had sheep.

- UU. 1. Anna ay ga du haw.
2. Anna ay ga du bari.
3. Anna ay ga du yo.

- UU. 1. But I'll have a cow.
2. But I'll have a horse.
3. But I'll have a camel.

- VV. 1. Anna iri ga du gorn'o ya'.
2. Anna iri ga du hi'tyin ya'.
3. Anna iri ga du fedyi ya'.

- VV. 1. But we'll have chickens.
2. But we'll have goats.
3. But we'll have sheep.

- WW. 1. Amma a ga du haw ya'.
2. Amma a ga du bani ya'.
3. Amma a ga du yo ya'.

- WW. 1. But he'll have cows.
2. But he'll have horses.
3. But he'll have camels.

- XX. 1. Amma i ga du gorn'o ya'.
2. Amma i ga du hi'tyin ya'.
3. Amma i ga du fedyi ya'.

- XX. 1. But they'll have chickens.
2. But they'll have goats.
3. But they'll have sheep.

### Phonology Drills

ma

- A. 1. Ay ma Abdu.

name (def./indef.)

- A. 1. My name is Abdu.

mā

2. Ay mā ha' ka' ni ne.

to hear; understand

2. I heard what you said.

mā

3. Tyiro mā.

to be enough

3. There's enough salt.

mate

- B. 1. Mate boro ma?

how, what

- B. 1. What is this man's name?

māte

2. Ni go ga māte dama?

to feel

2. Do you feel well?

mo

- C. 1. Ay mo ga doru.

eye (indef.)

- C. 1. I hurt my eye.

mo

2. Ni mo ga bay.

also, too

2. You, too, know.

mō

3. Amina na mō hina.

rice (indef.)

3. Amina cooked some rice.

moru

D. 1. Tilaberi ga moru.

mōru

2. Bitā mōru.

labu

E. 1. Dabirdyo nā-ay labu.

lābu

2. Lābu furo hawro ra.

yesi

F. 1. Yesi ay ga hayni duma.

yēsi

2. Ay bariyo yēsi.

far

D. 1. Tilaberi is far.

to ferment

2. The porridge has fermented.

to pinch

E. 1. The door pinched me.

sand, earth (indef.)

2. Sand has gotten into the food.

next year

F. 1. Next year I'll sow millet.

to quench thirst

2. My-horse quenched his thirst.

UNIT 20

Dialogue 1

alwati  
A: Alwati fo no?

(time (indef. sg.))

A: What time is it?

susubay  
B: Susubay no.

early morning (indef.)

B: It's early morning.

Dialogue 2

alasar  
to  
A: Alasar to?

early evening (indef.)

to arrive

A: Is it early evening (yet)?

alula  
B: Ha'a, alula no.

late afternoon (indef.)

B: No, it's late afternoon.

Dialogue 3

almari  
tyin  
A: Almari no wala tyin?

late evening (indef.)

night (indef.)

A: Is it late evening or night?

alfazar  
B: Alfazar no.

very early morning (indef.)

B: It's very early morning.

Dialogue 4

aduha  
bisa  
A: Aduha bisa?

late morning (indef.)

to pass, be past

A: Is it past late morning?

zari  
B: Oho, zari no.

early afternoon (indef.)

B: Yes, it's early afternoon.

Dialogue 5

atinni  
A: Hu'kuna atinni no?

Monday (indef.)  
A: Is today Monday?

atalata  
B: Ha'a. Hu'kuna atalata no.

Tuesday (indef.)  
B: No. Today is Tuesday.

Dialogue 6

alarba  
A: Bi alarba no?

Wednesday (indef.)  
A: Was yesterday Wednesday?

alamisi  
B: Ha'a. Bi alamisi no.

Thursday (indef.)  
B: No. Yesterday was Thursday.

Dialogue 7

hanberi  
A: Suba hanberi no?

Friday (indef.)  
A: Will tomorrow be Friday?

asipti  
B: Ha'a. Suba asipti no.

Saturday (indef.)  
B: No. Tomorrow will be Saturday.

Dialogue 8

alhadi  
A: Hu'kuna asipti no wala  
alhadi?

Sunday (indef.)  
A: Is today Saturday or Sunday?

B: Hu'kuna alhadi no.

B: Today is Sunday.

Dialogue 9

hari  
A: Hari ga ka hu'kuna?

rain, water (indef. sg.)

A: Is it going to be rainy today?

tamma  
B: Ay ga tamma.  
woyno  
Woyno si no.

to believe

B: I think so.

sun (indef.)

It isn't sunny.

Dialogue 10

bena  
hirri  
A: Bena ga hirri hu'kuna?

sky (def.)

to be cloudy

A: Is it going to be cloudy today?

B: Ay si tamma. Woyno go no.

B: I think not. It's sunny.

Dialogue 11

korni  
A: Korni ga te hu'kuna?

heat (indef. sg.)

A: Is it going to be hot today?

dahir  
B: Dahir no.  
buru  
Buru ya' si no.

sure, certain

B: It certainly is.

cloud (indef.)

It isn't cloudy.

Dialogue 12

yeni  
A: Yeni ga te hu'kuna?

coolness (indef. sg.)

A: Is it going to be cool today?

hambara  
B: Hambara. Buru ya' go no.

perhaps, probably

B: Perhaps. It's cloudy.

## Structural Drills

A. 1. Alwati fo no?  
Alfazar no.

2. Alwati fo no?  
Susubay no.

3. Alwati fo no?  
Aduha no.

4. Alwati fo no?  
Zari no.

5. Alwati fo no?  
Alula no.

6. Alwati fo no?  
Alasar no.

7. Alwati fo no?  
Almari no.

8. Alwati fo no?  
Tyin no.

B. 1. Alfazar to?

2. Susubay to?

3. Aduha to?

4. Zari to?

5. Alula to?

6. Alasar to?

7. Almari to?

8. Tyin to?

C. 1. Alfazar bisa?

2. Susubay bisa?

3. Aduha bisa?

4. Zari bisa?

A. 1. What time is it?

It's very early morning.

2. What time is it?

It's early morning.

3. What time is it?

It's late morning.

4. What time is it?

It's early afternoon.

5. What time is it?

It's late afternoon.

6. What time is it?

It's early evening.

7. What time is it?

It's late evening.

8. What time is it?

It's night.

B. 1. Is it very early morning (yet)?

2. Is it early morning (yet)?

3. Is it late morning (yet)?

4. Is it early afternoon (yet)?

5. Is it late afternoon (yet)?

6. Is it early evening (yet)?

7. Is it late evening (yet)?

8. Is it night (yet)?

C. 1. Is it past very early morning?

2. Is it past early morning?

3. Is it past late morning?

4. Is it past early afternoon?

5. Alula bisa?
6. Alasar bisa?
7. Almari bisa?
8. Tyin bisa?

5. Is it past late afternoon?
6. Is it past early evening?
7. Is it past late evening?
8. Is it past night?

D. 1. Alfazar no wala susubay?

D. 1. Is it very early morning or early morning?

2. Susubay no wala aduha?

2. Is it early morning or late morning?

3. Aduha no wala zari?

3. Is it late morning or early afternoon?

4. Zari no wala alula?

4. Is it early afternoon or late afternoon?

5. Alula no wala alasar?

5. Is it late afternoon or early evening?

6. Alasar no wala almari?

6. Is it early evening or late evening?

7. Almari no wala tyin?

7. Is it late evening or night?

8. Tyin no wala alfazar?

8. Is it night or very early morning?

E. 1. Hu'kuna atinni no?

E. 1. Is today Monday?

2. Hu'kuna atalata no?

2. Is today Tuesday?

3. Hu'kuna alarba no?

3. Is today Wednesday?

4. Hu'kuna alamisi no?

4. Is today Thursday?

5. Hu'kuna hanberu no?

5. Is today Friday?

6. Hu'kuna asipti no?

6. Is today Saturday?

7. Hu'kuna alhadi no?

7. Is today Sunday?

F. 1. Bi atinni no?

F. 1. Was yesterday Monday?

2. Bi atalata no?

2. Was yesterday Tuesday?

3. Bi alarba no?

3. Was yesterday Wednesday?

4. Bi alamisi no?

4. Was yesterday Thursday?

5. Bi hanberu no?

5. Was yesterday Friday?

6. Bi asipti no?

7. Bi alhari no?

G. 1. Suba atinni no?

2. Suba atalata no?

3. Suba alarba no?

4. Suba alamisi no?

5. Suba hanberi no?

6. Suba asipti no?

7. Suba alhari no?

H. 1. Hu'kuna atinni no.

2. Hu'kuna atalata no.

3. Hu'kuna alarba no.

4. Hu'kuna alamisi no.

5. Hu'kuna hanberi no.

6. Hu'kuna asipti no.

7. Hu'kuna alhari no.

I. 1. Bi atinni no.

2. Bi atalata no.

3. Bi alarba no.

4. Bi alamisi no.

5. Bi hanberi no.

6. Bi asipti no.

7. Bi alhari no.

J. 1. Suba atinni no.

2. Suba atalata no.

3. Suba alarba no.

4. Suba alamisi no.

5. Suba hanberi no.

6. Suba asipti no.

7. Suba alhari no.

6. Was yesterday Saturday?

7. Was yesterday Sunday?

G. 1. Will tomorrow be Monday?

2. Will tomorrow be Tuesday?

3. Will tomorrow be Wednesday?

4. Will tomorrow be Thursday?

5. Will tomorrow be Friday?

6. Will tomorrow be Saturday?

7. Will tomorrow be Sunday?

H. 1. Today is Monday.

2. Today is Tuesday.

3. Today is Wednesday.

4. Today is Thursday.

5. Today is Friday.

6. Today is Saturday.

7. Today is Sunday.

I. 1. Yesterday was Monday.

2. Yesterday was Tuesday.

3. Yesterday was Wednesday.

4. Yesterday was Thursday.

5. Yesterday was Friday.

6. Yesterday was Saturday.

7. Yesterday was Sunday.

J. 1. Tomorrow will be Monday.

2. Tomorrow will be Tuesday.

3. Tomorrow will be Wednesday.

4. Tomorrow will be Thursday.

5. Tomorrow will be Friday.

6. Tomorrow will be Saturday.

7. Tomorrow will be Sunday.

- K. 1. Hu'kuna atinni no wala atalata?
2. Hu'kuna atalata no wala alarba?
3. Hu'kuna alarba no wala alamisi?
4. Hu'kuna alamisi no wala hanberi?
5. Hu'kuna hanberi no wala asipti?
6. Hu'kuna asipti no wala alhadi?
7. Hu'kuna alhadi no wala atinni?

- K. 1. Is today Monday or Tuesday?
2. Is today Tuesday or Wednesday?
3. Is today Wednesday or Thursday?
4. Is today Thursday or Friday?
5. Is today Friday or Saturday?
6. Is today Saturday or Sunday?
7. Is today Sunday or Monday?

- L. 1. Hari ga ka hu'kuna?  
Ay ga tamma.
2. Hari ga ka hu'kuna?  
Ay si tamma.
3. Hari ga ka hu'kuna?  
Dahir no.
4. Hari ga ka hu'kuna?  
Hambara.

- L. 1. Is it going to be rainy today?  
I think so.
2. Is it going to be rainy today?  
I think not.
3. Is it going to be rainy today?  
It certainly is.
4. Is it going to be rainy today?  
Perhaps.

- M. 1. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna?  
Ay ga tamma.
2. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna?  
Ay si tamma.
3. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna?  
Dahir no.
4. Bena ga hirri hu'kuna?  
Hambara.

- M. 1. Is it going to be cloudy today?  
I think so.
2. Is it going to be cloudy today?  
I think not.
3. Is it going to be cloudy today?  
It certainly is.
4. Is it going to be cloudy today?  
Perhaps.

- N. 1. Kornī ga te hu'kuna?  
Ay ga tamma.
2. Kornī ga te hu'kuna?  
Ay si tamma.
3. Kornī ga te hu'kuna?  
Dahir no.
4. Kornī ga te hu'kuna?  
Hambara.

- O. 1. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?  
Ay ga tamma.
2. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?  
Ay si tamma.
3. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?  
Dahir no.
4. Yeni ga te hu'kuna?  
Hambara.

- P. 1. Woyno go no.
2. Ay ga tamma. Woyno go no.
3. Ay si tamma. Woyno go no.
4. Dahir no. Woyno go no.
5. Hambara. Woyno go no.

- Q. 1. Woyno si no.
2. Ay ga tamma. Woyno si no.
3. Ay si tamma. Woyno si no.
4. Dahir no. Woyno si no.
5. Hambara. Woyno si no.

- R. 1. Buru ya' go no.
2. Ay ga tamma. Buru ya' go no.

- N. 1. Is it going to be hot today?  
I think so.
2. Is it going to be hot today?  
I think not.
3. Is it going to be hot today?  
It certainly is.
4. Is it going to be hot today?  
Perhaps.

- O. 1. Is it going to be cool today?  
I think so.
2. Is it going to be cool today?  
I think not.
3. Is it going to be cool today?  
It certainly is.
4. Is it going to be cool today?  
Perhaps.

- P. 1. It's sunny.
2. I think so. It's sunny.
3. I think not. It's sunny.
4. It certainly is. It's sunny.
5. Perhaps. It's sunny.

- Q. 1. It isn't sunny.
2. I think so. It isn't sunny.
3. I think not. It isn't sunny.
4. It certainly is. It isn't sunny.
5. Perhaps. It isn't sunny.

- R. 1. It's cloudy.
2. I think so. It's cloudy.

3. Ay si tamma. Buru ya' go no.
4. Dahir no. Buru ya' go no.
5. Hambara. Buru ya' go no.

3. I think not. It's cloudy.
4. It certainly is. It's cloudy.
5. Perhaps. It's cloudy.

- S. 1. Buru ya' si no.
2. Ay ga tamma. Buru ya' si no.
3. Ay si tamma. Buru ya' si no.
4. Dahir no. Buru ya' si no.
5. Hambara. Buru ya' si no.

- S. 1. It isn't cloudy.
2. I think so. It isn't cloudy.
3. I think not. It isn't cloudy.
4. It certainly is. It isn't cloudy.
5. Perhaps. It isn't cloudy.

### Phonology Drills

biti

- A. 1. Woyna na ay bon'c bitu.

to disturb, upset

- A. 1. The sun has upset my head.

bitti

2. Haro si bori, bitti no.

sediment deposit (of a liquid) (indef.)

2. This water is dirty; there is sediment (in it).

fata

- B. 1. Tyura fata tyeri.

wing. (indef.)

- B. 1. The bird's wing is broken.

fatta

2. Fatta fuwo ra.

to leave

2. Leave the house.

hima

- C. 1. Ay hima ga koy fu.

to have to

- C. 1. I must go home.

himma

2. Iri ma himma da' goyo ga.

to decide

2. Let's decide to do this work.

hano

D. 1. Hano ka' Abdu ka alamisi no.

hanno

2. Abdu go'da bari hanno.

folo

E. 1. I fo no folo ra?

follo

2. Bakari ha'so follo.

hiri

F. 1. Bibata go'da hiri hanno.

hirri

2. Abdu nda Bakari farey ga hirri.

day (def.)

D. 1. The day of Abdu's arrival was Thursday.

pretty, handsome (def./indef. sg.)

2. Abdu has a pretty horse.

bag, napkin (def.)

E. 1. What is there in this bag?

to be mad, crazy

2. Bakari's dog is mad.

pearl (indef.)

F. 1. Bibata has a pretty pearl.

adjoining (def./indef. sg.)

2. Abdu and Bakari's fields are adjoining.

UNIT 21

Dialogue 1

bumbo  
hawro  
hina

oneself (def.)  
porridge, food (def. sg.)  
to cook

A: Ni bumbo no ga hawro hina?

A: Did you cook the porridge yourself?

B: Oho, ay bumbo no na a hina.

B: Yes, I cooked it myself.

wati  
kulu  
hawru

time (indef. sg.)  
every, each, all  
porridge, food (indef. sg.)

A: Ni ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?

A: Do you eat porridge all the time?

soro  
zaro

time (indef. sg.)  
day (def.)

B: Ha'a, soro hi'ka no ay ga a  
n'wa zaro ra.

B: No, I eat it twice a day.

Dialogue 2

hamo

meat (def. sg.)

A: I'ga bumbo no na hamo hina?

A: Did she cook the meat herself?

B: Oho, i'ga bumbo no na hamo  
hina.

B: Yes, she cooked the meat herself.

ham

meat (indef. sg.)

A: A ga ham n'wa wati kulu?

A: Does she eat meat all the time?

B: Ha'a, soro hi'ka no a ga ham  
n'wa zaro ra.

B: No, she eats meat twice a day.

Dialogue 3

bumbey

mwa

A: Aran bumbey no na mwa hina?

B: Oho, iri bumbey no na a hina.

mo

A: Aran ga mo n'wa wati kulu?

B: Ha'a, soro hi'ka no iri ga a  
n'wa zaro ra.

oneself (def. pl.)

rice (def. sg.)

A: Did you cook the rice yourselves?

B: Yes, we cooked it ourselves.

rice (indef. sg.)

A: Do you eat rice all the time?

B: No, we eat it twice a day.

Dialogue 4

dono

dibi

A: I'gey bumbey no na dono dibi?

B: Oho, i'gey bumbey no na dono  
dibi.

donu

ha'

A: I ga donu ha' wati kulu?

B: Ha'a, soro hi'ka no i ga donu  
ha' zaro ra.

dono (a drink made of millet)  
(def. sg.)

to mix

A: Did they mix the dono themselves?

B: Yes, they mixed the dono them-  
selves.

donu (a drink made of millet)  
(indef. sg.)

to drink

A: Do they drink donu all the time?

B: No, they drink donu twice a day.

## Structural Drills

- A. 1. Ni bumbo ne na hawro hina?  
2. Ni bumbo no na hamo hina?  
3. Ni bumbo no na mwa hina?
- B. 1. Aran bumbey no na hawro hina?  
2. Aran bumbey no na hamo hina?  
3. Aran bumbey no na mwa hina?
- C. 1. I'ga bumbo no na hawro hina?  
2. I'ga bumbo no na hamo hina?  
3. I'ga bumbo no na mwa hina?
- D. 1. I'gey bumbey no na hawro hina?  
2. I'gey bumbey no na hamo hina?  
3. I'gey bumbey no na mwa hina?
- E. 1. Ni bumbo no na dono dibi?  
2. Aran bumbey no na dono dibi?  
3. I'ga bumbo no na dono dibi?  
4. I'gey bumbey no na dono dibi?
- F. 1. Ay bumbo no na hawro hina.  
2. Ay bumbo no na hamo hina.  
3. Ay bumbo no na mwa hina.
- G. 1. Iri bumbey no na hawro hina.  
2. Iri bumbey no na hamo hina.  
3. Iri bumbey no na mwa hina.
- H. 1. I'ga bumbo no na hawro hina.  
2. I'ga bumbo no na hamo hina.  
3. I'ga bumbo no na mwa hina.
- A. 1. Did you cook the porridge yourself?  
2. Did you cook the meat yourself?  
3. Did you cook the rice yourself?
- B. 1. Did you cook the porridge yourselves?  
2. Did you cook the meat yourselves?  
3. Did you cook the rice yourselves?
- C. 1. Did she cook the porridge herself?  
2. Did she cook the meat herself?  
3. Did she cook the rice herself?
- D. 1. Did they cook the porridge themselves?  
2. Did they cook the meat themselves?  
3. Did they cook the rice themselves?
- E. 1. Did you mix the dono yourself?  
2. Did you mix the dono yourselves?  
3. Did she mix the dono herself?  
4. Did they mix the dono themselves?
- F. 1. I cooked the porridge myself.  
2. I cooked the meat myself.  
3. I cooked the rice myself.
- G. 1. We cooked the porridge ourselves.  
2. We cooked the meat ourselves.  
3. We cooked the rice ourselves.
- H. 1. She cooked the porridge herself.  
2. She cooked the meat herself.  
3. She cooked the rice herself.

I. 1. I'gey bumbey no na hawro hina.

2. I'gey bumbey no na hamo hina.

3. I'gey bumbey no na mwa hina.

J. 1. Ay bumbo no na dono dibi.

2. Iri bumbey no na dono dibi.

3. I'ga bumbo no na dono dibi.

4. I'gey bumbey no na dono dibi.

K. 1. Oho, ay bumbo no na a hina.

2. Oho, iri bumbey no na a hina.

3. Oho, i'ga bumbo no na a hina.

4. Oho, i'gey bumbey no na a hina.

L. 1. Oho, ay bumbo no na a dibi.

2. Oho, iri bumbey no na a dibi.

3. Oho, i'ga bumbo no na a dibi.

4. Oho, i'gey bumbey no na a dibi.

M. 1. Ni ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?

2. Ni ga ham n'wa wati kulu?

3. Ni ga no n'wa wati kulu?

N. 1. Aran ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?

2. Aran ga ham n'wa wati kulu?

3. Aran ga no n'wa wati kulu?

O. 1. A ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?

2. A ga ham n'wa wati kulu?

3. A ga no n'wa wati kulu?

P. 1. I ga hawru n'wa wati kulu?

2. I ga ham n'wa wati kulu?

3. I ga no n'wa wati kulu?

I. 1. They cooked the porridge themselves.

2. They cooked the meat themselves.

3. They cooked the rice themselves.

J. 1. I mixed the dono myself.

2. We mixed the dono ourselves.

3. She mixed the dono herself.

4. They mixed the dono themselves.

K. 1. Yes, I cooked it myself.

2. Yes, we cooked it ourselves.

3. Yes, she cooked it herself.

4. Yes, they cooked it themselves.

L. 1. Yes, I mixed it myself.

2. Yes, we mixed it ourselves.

3. Yes, she mixed it herself.

4. Yes, they mixed it themselves.

M. 1. Do you eat porridge all the time?

2. Do you eat meat all the time?

3. Do you eat rice all the time?

N. 1. Do you eat porridge all the time?

2. Do you eat meat all the time?

3. Do you eat rice all the time?

O. 1. Does he/she eat porridge all the time?

2. Does he/she eat meat all the time?

3. Does he/she eat rice all the time?

P. 1. Do they eat porridge all the time?

2. Do they eat meat all the time?

3. Do they eat rice all the time?

- Q. 1. Ni ga donu ha' wati kulu?
2. Aran ga donu ha' wati kulu?
3. A ga donu ha' wati kulu?
4. I ga donu ha' wati kulu?

- Q. 1. Do you drink donu all the time?
2. Do you drink donu all the time?
3. Does he/she drink donu all the time?
4. Do they drink donu all the time?

- R. 1. Soro hi'ka no ay ga hawru  
n'wa zaro ra.
2. Soro hi'ka no ay ga ham  
n'wa zaro ra.
3. Soro hi'ka no ay ga mo  
n'wa zaro ra.

- R. 1. I eat porridge twice a day.
2. I eat meat twice a day.
3. I eat rice twice a day.

- S. 1. Soro hi'ka no iri ga hawru  
n'wa zaro ra.
2. Soro hi'ka no iri ga ham  
n'wa zaro ra.
3. Soro hi'ka no iri ga mo  
n'wa zaro ra.

- S. 1. We eat porridge twice a day.
2. We eat meat twice a day.
3. We eat rice twice a day.

- T. 1. Soro hi'ka no a ga hawru  
n'wa zaro ra.
2. Soro hi'ka no a ga ham  
n'wa zaro ra.
3. Soro hi'ka no a ga mo  
n'wa zaro ra.

- T. 1. He/She eats porridge twice a day.
2. He/She eats meat twice a day.
3. He/She eats rice twice a day.

- U. 1. Soro hi'ka no i ga hawru  
n'wa zaro ra.
2. Soro hi'ka no i ga ham  
n'wa zaro ra.
3. Soro hi'ka no i ga mo  
n'wa zaro ra.

- U. 1. They eat porridge twice a day.
2. They eat meat twice a day.
3. They eat rice twice a day.

V. 1. Soro hi'ka no ay ga donu ha'  
zaro ra.

2. Soro hi'ka no iri ga donu  
ha' zaro ra.

3. Soro hi'ka no a ga donu ha'  
zaro ra.

4. Soro hi'ka no i ga donu ha'  
zaro ra.

W. 1. Soro hi'ka no ay ga a n'wa  
zaro ra.

2. Soro hi'ka no iri ga a n'wa  
zaro ra.

3. Soro hi'ka no a ga a n'wa  
zaro ra.

4. Soro hi'ka no i ga a n'wa  
zaro ra.

X. 1. Soro hi'ka no ay ga a ha'  
zaro ra.

2. Soro hi'ka no iri ga a ha'  
zaro ra.

3. Soro hi'ka no a ga a ha'  
zaro ra.

4. Soro hi'ka no i ga a ha'  
zaro ra.

V. 1. I drink donu twice a day.

2. We drink donu twice a day.

3. He/She drinks donu twice a  
day.

4. They drink donu twice a day.

W. 1. I eat it twice a day.

2. We eat it twice a day.

3. He/She eats it twice a day.

4. They eat it twice a day.

X. 1. I drink it twice a day.

2. We drink it twice a day.

3. He/She drinks it twice a day.

4. They drink it twice a day.

UNIT 22

Dialogue 1

alborey

A: I fo no alborey go ga te?

men (def.)

A: What are the men doing?

tafe

ta

B: I go ga tafe ta no.

tafe (a loose garment) (indef.)

to sew

B: They're sewing a tafe.

i fo se

tyere

banda

goy

A: I fo se no i go ga goy tyere  
banda?

why

each other

with

to work

A: Why are they working together?

hima

ga

B: I ga hima ga tyere ga.<sup>1</sup>

to have to, must

(signals a compound predicate)

B: They must help each other.

Dialogue 2

woyborey

A: I fo no woyborey go ga te?

women (def.)

A: What are the women doing?

gasey

nyun

B: I go ga gasey nyun.

calabashes (def.)

to wash

B: They're washing calabashes.

A: I fo se no i go ga goy tyere  
banda?

A: Why are they working together?

dona

B: I ga dona ga tyere ga.<sup>1</sup>

to be in the habit of

B: They're in the habit of helping  
each other.

### Dialogue 3

goro  
A: I fo se no alborey go ga goro  
tyere banda?

to sit  
A: Why are the men sitting together?

fakarey  
B: I go ga fakarey no.

to chat  
B: They're chatting.

A: I fo no i go ga ta?

A: What are they sewing?

kwayi  
B: I go ga kwayi ta no.

kwayi (a garment) (indef.)  
B: They're sewing a kwayi.

### Dialogue 4

kay  
A: I fo se no woyborey go ga  
kay tyere banda?

to stand  
A: Why are the women standing together?

mima'da  
B: I go ga mima'da no.

to gossip  
B: They're gossiping.

### Dialogue 5

A: I fo no i go ga nyun?

A: What are they washing?

tasey  
B: I go ga tasey nyun.

pans (def.)  
B: They're washing pans.

### Dialogue 6

A: I fo no alborey go ga ta?

A: What are the men sewing?

mudun  
B: I go ga mudun ta no.

trousers (indef. sg.)  
B: They're sewing trousers.

A: I fo no woyborey go ga nyun?

A: What are the women washing?

kusey

pots (def.)

B: I go ga kusey nyun.

B: They're washing pots.

A: I fo se no i go ga goy tyere  
banda?

A: Why are they working together?

B: I ga foy ga tyere ga.<sup>1</sup>

B: They spend the day helping each other.

### Note on the Dialogues

1. In these expressions, the first ga signals the habitual Present of both foy 'to spend the day' and ga 'to help,' the last word of the sentence. The second ga carries the meaning of "and" in a comparable English structure.

### Structural Drills

A. 1. I fo no alborey go ga te?

A. 1. What are the men doing?

2. I fo no woyborey go ga te?

2. What are the women doing?

3. I fo no zankey go ga te?

3. What are the children doing?

B. 1. I fo no alborey go ga te?

B. 1. What are the men doing?

2. I fo no alborey go ga ta?

2. What are the men sewing?

3. I fo no alborey go ga nyun?

3. What are the men washing?

C. 1. I fo no woyborey go ga te?

C. 1. What are the women doing?

2. I fo no woyborey go ga ta?

2. What are the women sewing?

3. I fo no woyborey go ga nyun?

3. What are the women washing?

D. 1. I fo no i go ga te?

D. 1. What are they doing?

2. I fo no i go ga ta?

2. What are they sewing?

3. I fo no i go ga nyun?

3. What are they washing?

- E. 1. I go ga tafe ta no.  
 2. I go ga kwayi ta no.  
 3. I go ga mundun ta no.

- F. 1. I go ga gasey nyun.  
 2. I go ga tasey nyun.  
 3. I go ga kusey nyun.

- G. 1. I fo no alborey go ga te?  
 I go ga tafe ta no.  
 2. I fo no alborey go ga te?  
 I go ga kwayi ta no.  
 3. I fo no alborey go ga te?  
 I go ga mundun ta no.

- H. 1. I fo no woyborey go ga te?  
 I go ga gasey nyun.  
 2. I fo no woyborey go ga te?  
 I go ga tasey nyun.  
 3. I fo no woyborey go ga te?  
 I go ga kusey nyun.

- I. 1. I fo se no alborey go ga  
gore tyere banda?  
 2. I fo se no alborey go ga  
kay tyere banda?  
 3. I fo se no alborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?

- J. 1. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
gore tyere banda?  
 2. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
kay tyere banda?  
 3. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?

- E. 1. They're sewing a tafe.  
 2. They're sewing a kwayi.  
 3. They're sewing a mundun.

- F. 1. They're washing calabashes.  
 2. They're washing pans.  
 3. They're washing pots.

- G. 1. What are the men doing?  
 They're sewing a tafe.  
 2. What are the men doing?  
 They're sewing a kwayi.  
 3. What are the men doing?  
 They're sewing a mundun.

- H. 1. What are the women doing?  
 They're washing calabashes.  
 2. What are the women doing?  
 They're washing pans.  
 3. What are the women doing?  
 They're washing pots.

- I. 1. Why are the men sitting to-  
 gether?  
 2. Why are the men standing to-  
 gether?  
 3. Why are the men working to-  
 gether?

- J. 1. Why are the women sitting to-  
 gether?  
 2. Why are the women standing to-  
 gether?  
 3. Why are the women working to-  
 gether?

- K. 1. I fo se no i go ga goro  
tyere banda?
2. I fo se no i go ga kay  
tyere banda?
3. I fo se no i go ga goy  
tyere banda?

- L. 1. I fo se no alborey go ga  
goro tyere banda?  
I go ga fakarey no.
2. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
goro tyere banda?  
I go ga fakarey no.
3. I fo se no i go ga goro  
tyere banda?  
I go ga fakarey no.
4. I fo se no alborey go ga  
kay tyere banda?  
I go ga fakarey no.
5. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
kay tyere banda?  
I go ga fakarey no.
6. I fo se no i go ga kay tyere  
banda?  
I go ga fakarey no.

- M. 1. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
goro tyere banda?  
I go ga mima'da no.
2. I fo se no i go ga goro  
tyere banda?  
I go ga mima'da no.

- K. 1. Why are they sitting together?
2. Why are they standing together?
3. Why are they working together?

- L. 1. Why are the men sitting to-  
gether?  
They're chatting.
2. Why are the women sitting to-  
gether?  
They're chatting.
3. Why are they sitting together?  
They're chatting.
4. Why are the men standing to-  
gether?  
They're chatting.
5. Why are the women standing to-  
gether?  
They're chatting.
6. Why are they standing together?  
They're chatting.

- M. 1. Why are the women sitting to-  
gether?  
They're gossiping.
2. Why are they sitting together?  
They're gossiping.

3. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
kay tyere banda?  
I go ga mima'da no.
4. I fo se no i go ga kay tyere  
banda?  
I go ga mima'da no.
- N. 1. I ga hina ga tyere ga.  
2. I ga dona ga tyere ga.  
3. I ga foy ga tyere ga.
- O. 1. Alborey ga hina ga tyere ga.  
2. Alborey ga dona ga tyere ga.  
3. Alborey ga foy ga tyere ga.
- P. 1. Woyborey ga hina ga tyere ga.  
2. Woyborey ga dona ga tyere ga.  
3. Woyborey ga foy ga tyere ga.
- Q. 1. I fo se no alborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?  
I ga hina ga tyere ga.  
2. I fo se no alborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?  
I ga dona ga tyere ga.
3. Why are the women standing to-  
gether?  
They're gossiping.
4. Why are they standing together?  
They're gossiping.
- N. 1. They must help each other.  
2. They're in the habit of helping  
each other.  
3. They spend the day helping  
each other.
- O. 1. The men must help each other.  
2. The men are in the habit of  
helping each other.  
3. The men spend the day helping  
each other.
- P. 1. The women must help each other.  
2. The women are in the habit of  
helping each other.  
3. The women spend the day helping  
each other.
- Q. 1. Why are the men working to-  
gether?  
They must help each other.  
2. Why are the men working to-  
gether?  
They're in the habit of helping  
each other.

3. I fo se no alborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?  
I ga foy ga tyere ga.

R. 1. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?  
I ga hina ga tyere ga.

2. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?  
I ga dona ga tyere ga.

3. I fo se no woyborey go ga  
goy tyere banda?  
I ga foy ga tyere ga.

3. Why are the men working to-  
gether?  
They spend the day helping  
each other.

R. 1. Why are the women working to-  
gether?  
They must help each other.

2. Why are the women working to-  
gether?  
They're in the habit of helping  
each other.

3. Why are the women working to-  
gether?  
They spend the day helping  
each other.

UNIT 23

Dialogue 1

buru  
go no  
A: Buru'go no?

B: A go no.

A: Mardye mardye<sup>1</sup> no?

dala  
B: Dala hi'ka hi'ka<sup>1</sup> no.

no  
A: Ay no<sup>2</sup> buru hi'ka.

bread (indef. sg.)  
there is/there are

A: Is there (any) bread?

B: There is (some).

A: How much is each (loaf)?

dala, a five franc coin  
(indef.)  
B: It's two dalas (ten francs) each.

to give  
A: Give me two loaves.

Dialogue 2

gu'guri  
A: Ni go'da gu'guri?<sup>3</sup>

B: Ay go'da gu'guri.

A: Mardye mardye no?

B: I hi'za dala hi'ka.

ba  
tyi'di  
A: Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di hi'ka.<sup>4</sup>

egg (indef.)  
A: Do you have eggs?

B: I have eggs.

A: How much are they?

B: They're three for two dalas (ten francs).

to want, need  
plus  
A: I want twelve.

B: Dala ahakku no.

B: It's eight dalas (forty francs).

A: A bori.

A: Good.

noro

money (def. sg.)

Noro ne.

Here's the money.

Dialogue 3

dyineyey

things (def.)

koy

owner (indef.)

A: Ni ga ti dyineyey koy?

A: Are you the owner of the things?

koyo

owner (def.)

i

them

B: Oho, ay ga ti i koyo.

B: Yes, I'm the owner (of them).

fulo

fulo (a hat) (def.)

A: Wadye no fulo?

A: How much is this fulo?

woro'ka

twenty

B: Dala woro'ka tyi'di hi'ka<sup>4</sup> no.

B: It's twenty-two dalas.

tyada

expensive (def./indef. sg.)

A: A tyada.

A: It's expensive.

dey

to buy

si

without

Ay ga a dey woro'ka i hi'ka si.<sup>4</sup>

I'll buy it for eighteen.

B: A dey woro'ka.

B: Buy it for twenty.

woro'za

thirty

A: Ay ga i hi'ka dey woro'za

A: I'll buy two for thirty-five.

tyi'di gu.<sup>4</sup>

woytatyi

forty

B: I dey woytatyi.

B: Buy them for forty.

A: Ha'a, ay ga i dey woro'za  
tyi'di gu.

to  
bana

B: To, bana.

A: No, I'll buy them for thirty-five.

O. K., agreed  
to pay

B: O. K., pay (me)

#### Dialogue 4

Birni

A: Mardye no ne ga koy Birni?

zangu

B: Zangu nda woro'ka tyi'di gu<sup>4</sup>  
no.

wohakku

A: Ay ga bana wohakku.

B: Bana zangu nda i woy.<sup>4</sup>

A: Ay ga bana zangu i woy si.<sup>4</sup>

B: Bana zangu.

A: To. I'ga ne.

furo

B: Furo.<sup>5</sup>

Birni (a village)

A: How much from here to Birni?

hundred

B: It's one hundred twenty-five.

eighty

A: I'll pay eighty.

B: Pay a hundred ten.

A: I'll pay ninety.

B: Pay a hundred.

A: O. K. Here it is.

to enter

B: Enter.

#### Notes on the Dialogues

1. The repetition of mardye and hi'ka in these expressions carries the sense of "each."

2. An Imperative form, identical with the Infinitive.
3. In this expression the singular form is used, although the sense is plural in English. The plural could also be used in Djerma.
4. The Djerma numbering system follows precisely the pattern indicated by the examples in this lesson. The numbers eleven through seventeen are formed as follows: "ten plus \_\_\_" (i woy + tyi'di + word for units digit).

eleven	<u>i woy tyi'di fo</u>
twelve	<u>i woy tyi'di hi'ka</u>
thirteen	<u>i woy tyi'di hi'ga</u>
fourteen	<u>i woy tyi'di taty</u>
fifteen	<u>i woy tyi'di gu</u>
sixteen	<u>i woy tyi'di iddu</u>
seventeen	<u>i woy tyi'di iye</u>

Eighteen and nineteen are formed: "twenty minus \_\_\_" (woro'ka + i hi'ka/ a fo + si).

eighteen	<u>woro'ka i hi'ka si</u>
nineteen	<u>woro'ka a fo si</u>

Multiples of ten, through eighty, are adapted and contracted forms of: "\_\_\_ tens" (synthesis of woy + word for units digit).

twenty	<u>woro'ka</u>
thirty	<u>woro'za</u>
forty	<u>woytaty</u>
fifty	<u>woygu</u>
sixty	<u>woydu</u>
seventy	<u>woyye</u>
eighty	<u>wohakku</u>

Ninety is formed: "a hundred minus ten". (zangu + i woy + si) or "nine tens."

ninety	<u>zangu i-woy si</u> or <u>woyga</u>
--------	---------------------------------------

Numbers between multiples of ten, through      seven, are formed: "multiple of ten plus     " (word for multiple of ten + tyi'di + word for units digit).

twenty-one	<u>woro'ka tyi'di fo</u>
thirty-two	<u>woro'za tyi'di hi'ka</u>
forty-three	<u>woytatyi tyi'di hi'za</u>
fifty-four	<u>woygu tyi'di tatyi</u>
sixty-five	<u>woydu tyi'di gu</u>
seventy-six	<u>woyye tyi'di iddu</u>
eighty-seven	<u>wohakku tyi'di iye</u>

Multiples of ten plus eight and nine are formed: "next higher multiple of ten minus     " (word for next high multiple of ten + i hi'ka/a fo + si).

twenty-eight	<u>woro'za i hi'ka si</u>
thirty-nine	<u>woytatyi a fo si</u>
seventy-eight	<u>wohakku i hi'ka si</u>
ninety-nine	<u>zangu a fo si</u>

Multiples of a hundred, through nine hundred, are formed: "     hundred" (zangu + word for units digit).

two hundred	<u>zangu hi'ka</u>
three hundred	<u>zangu hi'za</u>
four hundred	<u>zangu tatyi</u>
nine hundred	<u>zangu yegga</u>

Numbers between multiples of a hundred are formed: "     hundred and     " (zangu + word for hundreds digit + nda + remaining number(s)).

one hundred one	<u>zangu,nda fo</u>
two hundred ten	<u>zangu,hi'ka nda'i woy</u>
three hundred twenty-one	<u>zangu hi'za nda woro'ka tyi'di fo</u>
four hundred thirty-eight	<u>zangu tatyi nda woytatyi i hi'ka si</u>

Multiples of a thousand are formed: "      thousand" (za'bar + word for units digit).

one thousand  
two thousand  
three thousand

za'bar fo  
za'bar hi'ka  
za'bar ha'za

5. This expression is used to invite someone into one's home or office.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Buru go no?  
2. Gu'guri go no?  
3. Ham go no?  
4. Mo go no?

- A. 1. Is there (any) bread?  
2. Are there (any) eggs?  
3. Is there (any) meat?  
4. Is there (any) rice?

- B. 1. Buru go no?  
A go no.

- B. 1. Is there (any) bread?  
There is (some).

2. Gu'guri go no?  
A go no.

2. Are there (any) eggs?  
There are (some).

3. Ham go no?  
A go no.

3. Is there (any) meat?  
There is (some).

4. Mo go no?  
A go no.

4. Is there (any) rice?  
There is (some).

- C. 1. Ni go'da buru?  
2. Ni go'da gu'guri?  
3. Ni go'da ham?  
4. Ni go'da mo?

- C. 1. Do you have bread?  
2. Do you have eggs?  
3. Do you have meat?  
4. Do you have rice?

- D. 1. Ni go'da buru?  
Ay go'da buru.  
2. Ni go'da gu'guri?  
Ay go'da gu'guri.

- D. 1. Do you have bread?  
I have bread.  
2. Do you have eggs?  
I have eggs.

3. Ni go'da ham?  
Ay go'da ham.

4. Ni go'da mo?  
Ay go'da mo.

- E. 1. Dala fo no.  
2. Dala hi'ka no.  
3. Dala hi'za no.  
4. Dala tatyi no.  
5. Dala gu no.  
6. Dala iddu no.  
7. Dala iye no.  
8. Dala ahakku no.  
9. Dala yegga no.  
10. Dala woy no.

- F. 1. Dala fo fo no.  
2. Dala hi'ka hi'ka no.  
3. Dala hi'za hi'za no.  
4. Dala tatyi tatyi no.  
5. Dala gu gu no.  
6. Dala iddu iddu no.  
7. Dala iye iye no.  
8. Dala ahakku ahakku no.  
9. Dala yegga yegga no.  
10. Dala woy woy no.

- G. 1. Mardye mardye no?  
Dala fo fo no.  
2. Mardye mardye no?  
Dala hi'ka hi'ka no.  
3. Mardye mardye no?  
Dala hi'za hi'za no.

3. Do you have meat?  
I have meat.

4. Do you have rice?  
I have rice.

- E. 1. It's one dala.  
2. It's two dalas.  
3. It's three dalas.  
4. It's four dalas.  
5. It's five dalas.  
6. It's six dalas.  
7. It's seven dalas.  
8. It's eight dalas.  
9. It's nine dalas.  
10. It's ten dalas.

- F. 1. It's one dala each.  
2. It's two dalas each.  
3. It's three dalas each.  
4. It's four dalas each.  
5. It's five dalas each.  
6. It's six dalas each.  
7. It's seven dalas each.  
8. It's eight dalas each.  
9. It's nine dalas each.  
10. It's ten dalas each.

- G. 1. How much is each?  
It's one dala each.  
2. How much is each?  
It's two dalas each.  
3. How much is each?  
It's three dalas each.

4. Mardye mardye no?  
Dala tatyí tatyí no.

5. Mardye mardye no?  
Dala gu gu no.

H. 1. Mardye mardye no?  
I hi 'ka dala fo.

2. Mardye mardye no?  
I hi 'ka dala hi 'za.

3. Mardye mardye no?  
I hi 'ka dala tatyí.

4. Mardye mardye no?  
I hi 'ka dala gu.

I. 1. I hi 'za dala iddu.  
2. I hi 'za dala iye.  
3. I hi 'za dala ahakku.  
4. I hi 'za dala yegga.  
5. I hi 'za dala woy.

J. 1. Ay no buru fo.  
2. Ay no buru hi 'ka.  
3. Ay no buru hi 'za.  
4. Ay no buru tatyí.  
5. Ay no buru gu.

K. 1. Ay no buru iddu.  
2. Ay no buru iye.  
3. Ay no buru ahakku.  
4. Ay no buru yegga.  
5. Ay no buru woy.

4. How much is each?  
It's four dalas each.

5. How much is each?  
It's five dalas each.

H. 1. How much are they?  
They're two for one dala.

2. How much are they?  
They're two for three dalas.

3. How much are they?  
They're two for four dalas.

4. How much are they?  
They're two for five dalas.

I. 1. They're three for six dalas.  
2. They're three for seven dalas.  
3. They're three for eight dalas.  
4. They're three for nine dalas.  
5. They're three for ten dalas.

J. 1. Give me one loaf.  
2. Give me two loaves.  
3. Give me three loaves.  
4. Give me four loaves.  
5. Give me five loaves.

K. 1. Give me six loaves.  
2. Give me seven loaves.  
3. Give me eight loaves.  
4. Give me nine loaves.  
5. Give me ten loaves.

- L. 1. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di fo.
2. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di hi'ka.
3. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di hi'za.
4. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di tati.
5. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di gu.

- M. 1. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di iddu.
2. Ay ga ba i woy tyi'di iye.
3. Ay ga ba woro'ka i hi'ka si.
4. Ay ga ba woro'ka a fo si.
5. Ay ga ba woro'ka.

- N. 1. Dala woy tyi'di fo no.  
A bori. Noro ne.
2. Dala woy tyi'di hi'ka no.  
A bori. Noro ne.
3. Dala woy tyi'di hi'za no.  
A bori. Noro ne.
4. Dala woro'ka i hi'ka si no.  
A bori. Noro ne.
5. Dala woro'ka a fo si no.  
A bori. Noro ne.

- L. 1. I want eleven.
2. I want twelve.
3. I want thirteen.
4. I want fourteen.
5. I want fifteen.

- M. 1. I want sixteen.
2. I want seventeen.
3. I want eighteen.
4. I want nineteen.
5. I want twenty.

- N. 1. It's eleven dalas.  
Good. Here's the money.
2. It's twelve dalas.  
Good. Here's the money.
3. It's thirteen dalas.  
Good. Here's the money.
4. It's eighteen dalas.  
Good. Here's the money.
5. It's nineteen dalas.  
Good. Here's the money.

UNIT 24

Structural Drills

A. 1. Ni ga ti dyineyey koy?

2. Ni ga ti farey koy?

3. Ni ga ti fuwey koy?

4. Ni ga ti gasey koy?

5. Ni ga ti tasey koy?

6. Ni ga ti kusey koy?

B. 1. Ni ga ti fulo koy?

2. Ni ga ti fuwo koy?

3. Ni ga ti faro koy?

4. Ni ga ti hamo koy?

C. 1. Mardye no fulo?

Dala woro'ka no.

2. Mardye no fulo?

Dala woro'ka tyi'di fo no.

3. Mardye no fulo?

Dala woro'ka a fo si no.

4. Mardye no fulo?

Dala woro'ka tyi'di hi'ka no.

5. Mardye no fulo?

Dala woro'ka i hi'ka si no.

D. 1. Dala woro'za i hi'ka si no.

A tyada.

2. Dala woytaty i a fo si no.

A tyada.

3. Dala woygu i hi'ka si no.

A tyada.

A. 1. Are you the owner of the things?

2. Are you the owner of the fields?

3. Are you the owner of the houses?

4. Are you the owner of the calabashes?

5. Are you the owner of the pans?

6. Are you the owner of the pots?

E. 1. Are you the owner of the fulo?

2. Are you the owner of the house?

3. Are you the owner of the field?

4. Are you the owner of the meat?

C. 1. How much is this fulo?

It's twenty dalas.

2. How much is this fulo?

It's twenty-one dalas.

3. How much is this fulo?

It's nineteen dalas.

4. How much is this fulo?

It's twenty-two dalas.

5. How much is this fulo?

It's eighteen dalas.

D. 1. It's twenty-eight dalas.

It's expensive.

2. It's thirty-nine dalas.

It's expensive.

3. It's forty-eight dalas.

It's expensive.

4. Dala woydu a fo si no.  
A tyada.

5. Dala woyga i hi'ka si no.  
A tyada.

6. Dala zangu a fo si no.  
A tyada.

4. It's fifty-nine dalas.  
It's expensive.

5. It's eighty-eight dalas.  
It's expensive.

6. It's ninety-nine dalas.  
It's expensive.

- E. 1. A dey dala fo.  
2. A dey dala hi'ka.  
3. A dey dala hi'za.  
4. A dey dala tatyi.  
5. A dey dala gu.  
6. A dey dala iddu.  
7. A dey dala ie.  
8. A dey dala ahakku.  
9. A dey dala yegga.  
10. A dey dala woy.

- E. 1. Buy it for one.  
2. Buy it for two.  
3. Buy it for three.  
4. Buy it for four.  
5. Buy it for five.  
6. Buy it for six.  
7. Buy it for seven.  
8. Buy it for eight.  
9. Buy it for nine.  
10. Buy it for ten.

- F. 1. I dey dala woy.  
2. I dey dala woro'ka.  
3. I dey dala woro'za.  
4. I dey dala woytatyi.  
5. I dey dala woygu.  
6. I dey dala woydu.  
7. I dey dala woyye.  
8. I dey dala wohakku.  
9. I dey dala woyga.  
10. I dey dala zangu.

- F. 1. Buy them for ten.  
2. Buy them for twenty.  
3. Buy them for thirty.  
4. Buy them for forty.  
5. Buy them for fifty.  
6. Buy them for sixty.  
7. Buy them for seventy.  
8. Buy them for eighty.  
9. Buy them for ninety.  
10. Buy them for a hundred.

- G. 1. Bana woyye tyi'di fo.  
2. Bana woyye tyi'di hi'ka.  
3. Bana woyye tyi'di hi'za.  
4. Bana woyye tyi'di tatyi.  
5. Bana woyye tyi'di gu.

- G. 1. Pay seventy-one.  
2. Pay seventy-two.  
3. Pay seventy-three.  
4. Pay seventy-four.  
5. Pay seventy-five.

6. Bana woyve tyi'di iddu.

7. Bana woyye tyi'di iye.

8. Bana wohakku i hi'ka si.

9. Bana wohakku a fo si.

6. Pay seventy-six.

7. Pay seventy-seven.

8. Pay seventy-eight.

9. Pay seventy-nine.

H. 1. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di fo.

2. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di hi'ka.

3. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di hi'za.

4. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di taty.

5. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di gu.

6. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di iddu.

7. Ay ga i dey woyga tyi'di iye.

8. Ay ga i dey zangu i hi'ka si.

9. Ay ga i dey zangu a fo si.

H. 1. I'll buy them for ninety-one.

2. I'll buy them for ninety-two.

3. I'll buy them for ninety-three.

4. I'll buy them for ninety-four.

5. I'll buy them for ninety-five.

6. I'll buy them for ninety-six.

7. I'll buy them for ninety-seven.

8. I'll buy them for ninety-eight.

9. I'll buy them for ninety-nine.

I. 1. Ay ga bana woro'ka i hi'ka si.

2. Ay ga bana woro'za i hi'ka si.

3. Ay ga bana woytaty i hi'ka si.

4. Ay ga bana woygu i hi'ka si.

5. Ay ga bana woydu i hi'ka si.

6. Ay ga bana woyye i hi'ka si.

7. Ay ga bana wohakku i hi'ka si.

8. Ay ga bana woyga i hi'ka si.

9. Ay ga bana zangu i hi'ka si.

I. 1. I'll pay eighteen.

2. I'll pay twenty-eight.

3. I'll pay thirty-eight.

4. I'll pay forty-eight.

5. I'll pay fifty-eight.

6. I'll pay sixty-eight.

7. I'll pay seventy-eight.

8. I'll pay eighty-eight.

9. I'll pay ninety-eight.

J. 1. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woro'ka a fo si.

2. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woro'za a fo si.

3. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woytaty a fo si.

4. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woygu a fo si.

5. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woydu a fo si.

6. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woyye a fo si.

J. 1. I'll buy two for nineteen.

2. I'll buy two for twenty-nine.

3. I'll buy two for thirty-nine.

4. I'll buy two for forty-nine.

5. I'll buy two for fifty-nine.

6. I'll buy two for sixty-nine.

7. Ay ga i hi'ka dey wohakku  
a fo si.

8. Ay ga i hi'ka dey woyga a  
fo si.

9. Ay ga i hi'ka dey zangu a  
fo si.

K. 1. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu.  
To, bana.

2. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu hi'ka.  
To, bana.

3. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu hi'za.  
To, bana.

4. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu tatyi.  
To, bana.

5. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu gu.  
To, bana.

L. 1. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu iddu.

2. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu iye.

3. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu ahakku.

4. Ay ga i hi'za dey zangu yegga.

5. Ay ga i hi'za dey za'bar fo.

M. 1. Bana zangu nda i hi'ka.  
To, I'ga ne.

2. Bana zangu hi'ka nda i woy  
tyi'di hi'za.  
To, I'ga ne.

3. Bana zangu hi'za nda woro'ka  
tyi'di tatyi.  
To, I'ga ne.

7. I'll buy two for seventy-nine.

8. I'll buy two for eighty-nine.

9. I'll buy two for ninety-nine.

K. 1. I'll buy three for a hundred.  
O. K., pay (me).

2. I'll buy three for two hundred.  
O. K., pay (me).

3. I'll buy three for three hundred.  
O. K., pay (me).

4. I'll buy three for four hundred.  
O. K., pay (me).

5. I'll buy three for five hundred.  
O. K., pay (me).

L. 1. I'll buy three for six hundred.

2. I'll buy three for seven hundred.

3. I'll buy three for eight hundred.

4. I'll buy three for nine hundred.

5. I'll buy three for a thousand.

M. 1. Pay a hundred two.  
O. K. Here it is.

2. Pay two hundred thirteen.  
O. K. Here it is.

3. Pay three hundred twenty-four.  
O. K. Here it is.

4. Bana zangu tatyī nda woro'za  
tyi'di gu.

To. I'ga ne.

5. Bana zangu gu nda woytatyī  
tyi'di iddu.

To. I'ga ne.

N. 1. Bana zangu iddu nda woygu  
tyi'di iye.

2. Bana zangu iye nda woyye i  
hi'ka si.

3. Bana zangu ahakku nda wohakku  
a fo si.

4. Bana za'bar fo a fo si.

O. 1. Mardye no ne ga koy Birni?  
Zangu nda woro'ka tyi'di gu  
no.

2. Mardye no ne ga koy Niamey?  
Zangu hi'ka nda woygu no.

3. Mardye no ne ga koy Doso?  
Zangu hi'za nda woyye tyi'di  
gu no.

4. Mardye no ne ga koy Filindyē?  
Zangu gu no.

4. Pay four hundred thirty-five.

O. K. Here it is.

5. Pay five hundred forty-six.

O. K. Here it is.

N. 1. Pay six hundred fifty-seven.

2. Pay seven hundred sixty-eight.

3. Pay eight hundred seventy-nine.

4. Pay nine hundred ninety-nine.

O. 1. How much from here to Birni?

2. It's one hundred twenty-five.

2. How much from here to Niamey?

It's two hundred fifty.

3. How much from here to Doso?

It's three hundred seventy-five.

4. How much from here to Filindyē?

It's five hundred.

UNIT 25

Dialogue 1

A: Bakari dyiri mardye?

A: How old is Bakari?

B: A dyiri woro'ka i hi'ka si.

B: He's eighteen years old.

zen

to age

A: A zen Abdu?

A: Is he older than Abdu?

zanka

young (def./indef.)

nda

than

B: Ha'a, a ga zanka nda Abdu.

B: No, he's younger than Abdu.

Dialogue 2

A: Maman ga zanka nda Fatu?

A: Is Mamán younger than Fatu?

B: Ha'a, a zen Fatu.

B: No, he's older than Fatu.

A: Ni zen ey?

A: Are you older than they?

B: Ha'a, ay ga zanka nda ey.

B: No, I'm younger than they.

Dialogue 3

A: Abdu nda Yakuba dyiri mardye?

A: How old are Abdu and Yakuba?

B: I dyiri woro'za.

B: They're thirty years old.

Dialogue 4

A: Ni dyiri mardye?

A: How old are you?

B: Ay dyiri woy.

B: I'm ten years old.

A: Zanka mardye no aran kwara?

A: How many children are in your family?

B: Zanka hi'ka no iri kwara.

B: There are two children in our family.

bero

older brother/sister (def.)

A: Ni ga ti bero?

A: Are you the older brother?

kayno

younger brother/sister (def.)

B: Ha'a, ay ga ti kayno.

B: No, I'm the younger brother.

### Dialogue 5

A: Zanka mardye no aran kwara?

A: How many children are in your family?

B: Zanka iddu no iri kwara.

B: There are six children in our family.

A: Ni ga ti i kulu kayno?

A: Are you the youngest sister?

B: Ha'a, ay ga ti i kulu bero.

B: No, I'm the oldest sister.

### Dialogue 6

da'ga

as, like

A: Yakuba zen da'ga Abdu?

A: Is Yakuba as old as Abdu?

B: Ha'a, a mana zen da'ga Abdu.

B: No, he isn't as old as Abdu.

A: I'ga ga ti kayno?

A: Is he the younger brother?

B: Ha'a.

B: No.

A: A ga zanka da'ga Maman?

A: Is he as young as Maman?

B: Oho, a ga zanka da'ga Maman.

B: Yes, he's as young as Maman.

## Dialogue 7

A: Ni ga zanka da'ga Bakari?

A: Are you as young as Bakari?

B: Ha'a, ay si zanka da'ga i'ga.

B: No, I'm not as young as he.

A: Ni zen da'ga Amina nda Fatu?

A: Are you as old as Amina and Fatu?

B: Oho, ay zen da'ga i'gey.

B: Yes, I'm as old as they.

## Structural Drills

A. 1. Bakari dyiri mardye?

A. 1. How old is Bakari?

2. Amina dyiri mardye?

2. How old is Amina?

3. Maman dyiri mardye?

3. How old is Maman?

4. Fatu dyiri mardye?

4. How old is Fatu?

B. 1. Mi dyiri mardye?

B. 1. How old are you?

2. Aran dyiri mardye?

2. How old are you?

3. A dyiri mardye?

3. How old is he/she?

4. I dyiri mardye?

4. How old are they?

C. 1. Bakari dyiri wore'ka.

C. 1. Bakari is twenty years old.

2. Bakari dyiri woro'za.

2. Bakari is thirty years old.

3. Bakari dyiri woytatyi.

3. Bakari is forty years old.

4. Bakari dyiri woygu.

4. Bakari is fifty years old.

D. 1. Ay dyiri woy.

D. 1. I'm ten years old.

2. Iri dyiri woy.

2. We're ten years old.

3. A dyiri woy.

3. He's/She's ten years old.

4. I dyiri woy.

4. They're ten years old.

E. 1. Bakari zen Amina?

E. 1. Is Bakari older than Amina?

2. Amina zen Maman?

2. Is Amina older than Maman?

3. Maman zen Fatu?

3. Is Maman older than Fatu?

4. Fatu zen Bakari?

4. Is Fatu older than Bakari?

- F. 1. Bakari ga zanka nda Amina?  
 2. Amina ga zanka nda Maman?  
 3. Maman ga zanka nda Fatu?  
 4. Fatu ga zanka nda Bakari?

- G. 1. Ni zeh ay?  
 2. Aran zen a?  
 3. A zen iri?  
 4. Iri zen ey?

- H. 1. Ni ga zanka nda ay?  
 2. Aran ga zanka nda a?  
 3. A ga zanka nda iri?  
 4. Iri ga zanka nda ey?

- I. 1. Bakari zen Amina.  
 2. Amina zen Maman.  
 3. Maman zen Fatu.  
 4. Fatu zen Bakari.

- J. 1. Bakari ga zanka nda Amina.  
 2. Amina ga zanka nda Maman.  
 3. Maman ga zanka nda Fatu.  
 4. Fatu ga zanka nda Bakari.

- K. 1. Ni zen ay.  
 2. Aran zen a.  
 3. A zen iri.  
 4. Iri zen ey.

- L. 1. Ni ga zanka nda ay.  
 2. Aran ga zanka nda a.  
 3. A ga zanka nda iri.  
 4. Iri ga zanka nda ey.

- F. 1. Is Bakari younger than Amina?  
 2. Is Amina younger than Maman?  
 3. Is Maman younger than Fatu?  
 4. Is Fatu younger than Bakari?

- G. 1. Are you older than I?  
 2. Are you older than he/she?  
 3. Is he/she older than we?  
 4. Are we older than they?

- H. 1. Are you younger than I?  
 2. Are you younger than he/she?  
 3. Is he/she younger than we?  
 4. Are we younger than they?

- I. 1. Bakari is older than Amina.  
 2. Amina is older than Maman.  
 3. Maman is older than Fatu.  
 4. Fatu is older than Bakari.

- J. 1. Bakari is younger than Amina.  
 2. Amina is younger than Maman.  
 3. Maman is younger than Fatu.  
 4. Fatu is younger than Bakari.

- K. 1. You're older than I.  
 2. You're older than he/she.  
 3. He's/She's older than we.  
 4. We're older than they.

- L. 1. You're younger than I.  
 2. You're younger than he/she.  
 3. He's/She's younger than we.  
 4. We're younger than they.

M. 1. Zanka mardye no aran kwara?

Zanka hi'ka no iri kwara.

2. Zanka mardye no aran kwara?

Zanka taty'i no iri kwara.

3. Zanka mardye no ni kwara?

Zanka iddu no ay kwara.

4. Zanka mardye no ni kwara?

Zanka ahakku no ay kwara.

N. 1. Ni ga ti bero?

2. I'ga ga ti bero?

3. Bakari ga ti bero?

4. Amina ga ti bero?

O. 1. Ni ga ti kayno?

2. I'ga ga ti kayno?

3. Bakari ga ti kayno?

4. Amina ga ti kayno?

P. 1. Ay ga ti bero.

2. I'ga ga ti bero.

3. Bakari ga ti bero.

4. Amina ga ti bero.

M. 1. How many children are in your family?

There are two children in our family.

2. How many children are in your family?

There are four children in our family.

3. How many children are in your family?

There are six children in my family.

4. How many children are in your family?

There are eight children in my family.

N. 1. Are you the older brother/sister?

2. Is he/she the older brother/sister?

3. Is Bakari the older brother?

4. Is Amina the older sister?

O. 1. Are you the younger brother/sister?

2. Is he/she the younger brother/sister?

3. Is Bakari the younger brother?

4. Is Amina the younger sister?

P. 1. I'm the older brother/sister.

2. He's/She's the older brother/sister.

3. Bakari is the older brother.

4. Amina is the older sister.

Q. 1. Ay ga ti kayno.

2. I'ga ga ti kayno.

3. Bakari ga ti kayno.

4. Amina ga ti kayno.

R. 1. Ni ga ti i kulu bero?

2. I'ga ga ti i kulu bero?

3. Bakari ga ti i kulu bero?

4. Amina ga ti i kulu bero?

S. 1. Ni ga ti i kulu kayno?

2. I'ga ga ti i kulu kayno?

3. Bakari ga ti i kulu kayno?

4. Amina ga ti i kulu kayno?

T. 1. Ay ga ti i kulu bero.

2. I'ga ga ti i kulu bero.

3. Bakari ga ti i kulu bero.

4. Amina ga ti i kulu bero.

U. 1. Ay ga ti i kulu kayno.

2. I'ga ga ti i kulu kayno.

3. Bakari ga ti i kulu kayno.

4. Amina ga ti i kulu kayno.

V. 1. Bakari zen da'ga Amina?

2. Amina zen da'ga Maman?

3. Maman zen da'ga Fatu?

4. Fatu zen da'ga Bakari?

Q. 1. I'm the younger brother/sister.

2. He's/She's the younger brother/sister.

3. Bakari is the younger brother.

4. Amina is the younger sister.

R. 1. Are you the oldest brother/sister?

2. Is he/she the oldest brother/sister?

3. Is Bakari the oldest brother?

4. Is Amina the oldest sister?

S. 1. Are you the youngest brother/sister?

2. Is he/she the youngest brother/sister?

3. Is Bakari the youngest brother?

4. Is Amina the youngest sister?

T. 1. I'm the oldest brother/sister.

2. He's/She's the oldest brother/sister.

3. Bakari is the oldest brother.

4. Amina is the oldest sister.

U. 1. I'm the youngest brother/sister.

2. He's/She's the youngest brother/sister.

3. Bakari is the youngest brother.

4. Amina is the youngest sister.

V. 1. Is Bakari as old as Amina?

2. Is Amina as old as Maman?

3. Is Maman as old as Fatu?

4. Is Fatu as old as Bakari?

- W. 1. Bakari ga zanka da'ga Amina?  
 2. Amina ga zanka da'ga Maman?  
 3. Maman ga zanka da'ga Fatu?  
 4. Fatu ga zanka da'ga Bakari?

- W. 1. Is Bakari as young as Amina?  
 2. Is Amina as young as Maman?  
 3. Is Maman as young as Fatu?  
 4. Is Fatu as young as Bakari?

- X. 1. Ni zen da'ga ay?  
 2. Aran zen da'ga i'ga?  
 3. A zen da'ga iri?  
 4. Iri zen da'ga i'gey?

- X. 1. Are you as old as I?  
 2. Are you as old as he/she?  
 3. Is he/she as old as we?  
 4. Are we as old as they?

- Y. 1. Ni ga zanka da'ga ay?  
 2. Aran ga zanka da'ga i'ga?  
 3. A ga zanka da'ga iri?  
 4. Iri ga zanka da'ga i'gey?

- Y. 1. Are you as young as I?  
 2. Are you as young as he/she?  
 3. Is he/she as young as we?  
 4. Are we as young as they?

- Z. 1. Bakari zen da'ga Amina.  
 2. Amina zen da'ga Maman.  
 3. Maman zen da'ga Fatu.  
 4. Fatu zen da'ga Bakari.

- Z. 1. Bakari is as old as Amina.  
 2. Amina is as old as Maman.  
 3. Maman is as old as Fatu.  
 4. Fatu is as old as Bakari.

- AA. 1. Bakari ga zanka da'ga Amina.  
 2. Amina ga zanka da'ga Maman.  
 3. Maman ga zanka da'ga Fatu.  
 4. Fatu ga zanka da'ga Bakari.

- AA. 1. Bakari is as young as Amina.  
 2. Amina is as young as Maman.  
 3. Maman is as young as Fatu.  
 4. Fatu is as young as Bakari.

- BB. 1. Ni zen da'ga ay.  
 2. Aran zen da'ga i'ga.  
 3. A zen da'ga iri.  
 4. Iri zen da'ga i'gey.

- BB. 1. You're as old as I.  
 2. You're as old as he/she.  
 3. He's/She's as old as we.  
 4. We're as old as they.

- CC. 1. Ni ga zanka da'ga ay.  
 2. Aran ga zanka da'ga i'ga.  
 3. A ga zanka da'ga iri.  
 4. Iri ga zanka da'ga i'gey.

- CC. 1. You're as young as I.  
 2. You're as young as he/she.  
 3. He's/She's as young as we.  
 4. We're as young as they.

- DD. 1. Bakari mana zen da'ga Amina. DD. 1. Bakari isn't as old as Amina.  
 2. Amina mana zen da'ga Maman. 2. Amina isn't as old as Maman.  
 3. Maman mana zen da'ga Fatu. 3. Maman isn't as old as Fatu.  
 4. Fatu mana zen da'ga Bakari. 4. Fatu isn't as old as Bakari.

- EE. 1. Bakari si zanka da'ga Amina. EE. 1. Bakari isn't as young as Amina.  
 2. Amina si zanka da'ga Maman. 2. Amina isn't as young as Maman.  
 3. Maman si zanka da'ga Fatu. 3. Maman isn't as young as Fatu.  
 4. Fatu si zanka da'ga Bakari. 4. Fatu isn't as young as Bakari.

- FF. 1. Ni mana zen da'ga ay. FF. 1. You're not as old as I.  
 2. Aran mana zen da'ga i'ga. 2. You're not as old as he/she.  
 3. A mana zen da'ga iri. 3. He's/She's not as old as we.  
 4. Iri mana zen da'ga i'gey. 4. We're not as old as they.

- GG. 1. Ni si zanka da'ga ay. GG. 1. You're not as young as I.  
 2. Aran si zanka da'ga i'ga. 2. You're not as young as he/she.  
 3. A si zanka da'ga iri. 3. He's/She's not as young as we.  
 4. Iri si zanka da'ga i'gey. 4. We're not as young as they.

UNIT 26

Dialogue 1

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ma                                  | to feel                             |
| dama                                | well-being (def./indef. sg.)        |
| A: A go ga ma dama?                 | A: Is he feeling well?              |
| dori                                | sickness. (indef. sg.)              |
| B: Ha'a, a go ga ma dori.           | B: No, he's feeling bad.            |
| korno                               | fever (def.)                        |
| A: A korno te dama gumo?            | A: Is his fever better?             |
| B: Ha'a.                            | B: No.                              |
| kotwa                               | coughing (def.)                     |
| ka'kam                              | to oppress                          |
| A: Manti a kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo? | A: Isn't his coughing worse?        |
| B: Oho, a go ga ka'kam gumo.        | B: Yes, it's worse.                 |
| no                                  | to give                             |
| safaro                              | medicine (def.)                     |
| A: Ni na a no safaro? <sup>1</sup>  | A: Have you given him the medicine? |
| hara'di <sup>2</sup>                | to make hungry                      |
| B: Oho. Amma a ga a hara'di.        | B: Yes. But it makes him hungry.    |

Dialogue 2

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| A: Ni go ga ma dama gumo?       | A: Are you feeling better? |
| B: Ha'a, ay go ga ma dori gumo. | B: No, I'm feeling worse.  |
| A: Ni kotwa go ga ka'kam?       | A: Is your coughing bad?   |

B: Oho.

B: Yes.

yero

vomiting (def.)

A: Manti ni yero te dama gumo?

A: Isn't your vomiting better?

B: Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam.

B: No, it's bad.

A: Ni na safaro ha'?

A: Have you taken the medicine?

dyewa'di<sup>2</sup>

to make thirsty

B: Oho. Anna a ga ay dyewa'di.

B: Yes. But it makes me thirsty.

### Dialogue 3

A: Ni go ga ma dori?

A: Are you feeling bad?

B: Oho.

B: Yes.

A: Ni yero go ga ka'kam gumo?

A: Is your vomiting worse?

B: Oho.

B: Yes.

A: Manti ni korno go ga ka'kam?

A: Isn't your fever bad?

B: Ha'a, a te dama gumo.

B: No, it's better.

A: Ni no safaro ha'?

A: Have you taken the medicine?

dyirba'di<sup>2</sup>

to make sleepy

B: Oho. Anna a ga ay dyirba'di.

B: Yes. But it makes me sleepy.

### Dialogue 4

A: A go ga ma dori gumo?

A: Is he feeling worse?

B: Oho.

B: Yes.

soro

A: A soro te dama?

B: Ha'a.

A: Manti a yero te dama?

B: Oho, a te dama.

A: Ni na a no safaro?

B: Oho.

diarrhea (def.)

A: Is his diarrhea over?

B: No.

A: Isn't his vomiting over?

B: Yes, it's over.

A: Have you given him the medicine?

B: Yes.

### Notes on the Dialogues

1. With no 'to give,' like some other verbs, the direct object follows the predicate.
2. The suffix -a'di can be added to most verbs to denote causative action.

### Structural Drills

A. 1. Ni go ga ma dama?

2. Aran go ga ma dama?

3. A go ga ma dama?

4. I go ga ma dama?

B. 1. Ni go ga ma dama gumo?

2. Aran go ga ma dama gumo?

3. A go ga ma dama gumo?

4. I go ga ma dama gumo?

C. 1. Ni go ga ma dori?

2. Aran go ga ma dori?

3. A go ga ma dori?

4. I go ga ma dori?

A. 1. Are you feeling well?

2. Are you feeling well?

3. Is he/she feeling well?

4. Are they feeling well?

B. 1. Are you feeling better?

2. Are you feeling better?

3. Is he/she feeling better?

4. Are they feeling better?

C. 1. Are you feeling bad?

2. Are you feeling bad?

3. Is he/she feeling bad?

4. Are they feeling bad?

- D. 1. Ni go ga ma dori gumo?  
 2. Aran go ga ma dori gumo?  
 3. A go ga ma dori gumo?  
 4. I go ga ma dori gumo?

- E. 1. Ay go ga ma dama.  
 2. Iri go ga ma dama.  
 3. A go ga ma dama.  
 4. I go ga ma dama.

- F. 1. Ay go ga ma dama gumo.  
 2. Iri go ga ma dama gumo.  
 3. A go ga ma dama gumo.  
 4. I go ga ma dama gumo.

- G. 1. Ay go ga ma dori.  
 2. Iri go ga ma dori.  
 3. A go ga ma dori.  
 4. I go ga ma dori.

- H. 1. Ay go ga ma dori gumo.  
 2. Iri go ga ma dori gumo.  
 3. A go ga ma dori gumo.  
 4. I go ga ma dori gumo.

- I. 1. Ni korno te dama?  
 2. Ni kotwa te dama?  
 3. Ni yero te dama?  
 4. Ni soro te dama?

- J. 1. A korno te dama gumo?  
 2. A kotwa te dama gumo?  
 3. A yero te dama gumo?  
 4. A soro te dama gumo?

- D. 1. Are you feeling worse?  
 2. Are you feeling worse?  
 3. Is he/she feeling worse?  
 4. Are they feeling worse?

- E. 1. I'm feeling well.  
 2. We're feeling well.  
 3. He's/She's feeling well.  
 4. They're feeling well.

- F. 1. I'm feeling better.  
 2. We're feeling better.  
 3. He's/She's feeling better.  
 4. They're feeling better.

- G. 1. I'm feeling bad.  
 2. We're feeling bad.  
 3. He's/She's feeling bad.  
 4. They're feeling bad.

- H. 1. I'm feeling worse.  
 2. We're feeling worse.  
 3. He's/She's feeling worse.  
 4. They're feeling worse.

- I. 1. Is your fever over?  
 2. Is your coughing over?  
 3. Is your vomiting over?  
 4. Is your diarrhea over?

- J. 1. Is his/her fever better?  
 2. Is his/her coughing better?  
 3. Is his/her vomiting better?  
 4. Is his/her diarrhea better?

- K. 1. Ni korno go ga ka'kam?  
 2. Ni kotwa go ga ka'kam?  
 3. Ni yero go ga ka'kam?  
 4. Ni soro go ga ka'kam?

- L. 1. A korno go ga ka'kam gumo?  
 2. A kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo?  
 3. A yero go ga ka'kam gumo?  
 4. A soro go ga ka'kam gumo?

- M. 1. Ay korno te dama.  
 2. Ay kotwa te dama.  
 3. Ay yero te dama.  
 4. Ay soro te dama.

- N. 1. A korno te dama gumo.  
 2. A kotwa te dama gumo.  
 3. A yero te dama gumo.  
 4. A soro te dama gumo.

- O. 1. Ay korno go ga ka'kam.  
 2. Ay kotwa go ga ka'kam.  
 3. Ay yero go ga ka'kam.  
 4. Ay soro go ga ka'kam.

- P. 1. A korno go ga ka'kam gumo.  
 2. A kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo.  
 3. A yero go ga ka'kam gumo.  
 4. A soro go ga ka'kam gumo.

- Q. 1. Manti ni korno te dama?  
 Oho, a te dama.  
 2. Manti ni kotwa te dama?  
 Oho, a te dama?

- K. 1. Is your fever bad?  
 2. Is your coughing bad?  
 3. Is your vomiting bad?  
 4. Is your diarrhea bad?

- L. 1. Is his/her fever worse?  
 2. Is his/her coughing worse?  
 3. Is his/her vomiting worse?  
 4. Is his/her diarrhea worse?

- M. 1. My fever is over.  
 2. My coughing is over.  
 3. My vomiting is over.  
 4. My diarrhea is over.

- N. 1. His/Her fever is better.  
 2. His/Her coughing is better.  
 3. His/Her vomiting is better.  
 4. His/Her diarrhea is better.

- O. 1. My fever is bad.  
 2. My coughing is bad.  
 3. My vomiting is bad.  
 4. My diarrhea is bad.

- P. 1. His/Her fever is worse.  
 2. His/Her coughing is worse.  
 3. His/Her vomiting is worse.  
 4. His/Her diarrhea is worse.

- Q. 1. Isn't your fever over?  
 Yes, it's over.  
 2. Isn't your coughing over?  
 Yes, it's over.

3. Manti ni yero te dama?

Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam.

4. Manti ni soro te dama?

Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam.

R. 1. Manti a korno te dama gumo?

Oho, a te dama gumo.

2. Manti a kotwa te dama gumo?

Oho, a te dama gumo.

3. Manti a yero te dama gumo?

Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam gumo.

4. Manti a soro te dama gumo?

Ha'a, a go ga ka'kam gumo.

S. 1. Manti ni korno go ga ka'kam?

Oho, a go ga ka'kam.

2. Manti ni kotwa go ga ka'kam?

Oho, a go ga ka'kam.

3. Manti ni yero go ga ka'kam?

Ha'a, a te dama.

4. Manti ni soro go ga ka'kam?

Ha'a, a te dama.

T. 1. Manti a korno go ga ka'kam gumo?

Oho, a go ga ka'kam gumo.

2. Manti a kotwa go ga ka'kam gumo?

Oho, a go ga ka'kam gumo.

3. Manti a yero go ga ka'kam gumo?

Ha'a, a te dama gumo.

4. Manti a soro go ga ka'kam gumo?

Ha'a, a te dama gumo.

3. Isn't your vomiting over?

No, it's bad.

4. Isn't your diarrhea over?

No, it's bad.

R. 1. Isn't his/her fever better?

Yes, it's better.

2. Isn't his/her coughing better?

Yes, it's better.

3. Isn't his/her vomiting better?

No, it's worse.

4. Isn't his/her diarrhea better?

No, it's worse.

S. 1. Isn't your fever bad?

Yes, it's bad.

2. Isn't your coughing bad?

Yes, it's bad.

3. Isn't your vomiting bad?

No, it's over.

4. Isn't your diarrhea bad?

No, it's over.

T. 1. Isn't his/her fever worse?

Yes, it's worse.

2. Isn't his/her coughing worse?

Yes, it's worse.

3. Isn't his/her vomiting worse?

No, it's better.

4. Isn't his/her diarrhea worse?

No, it's better.

- U. 1. A ga ay hara'di.  
 2. A ga ay dyewa'di.  
 3. A-go ay dyirba'di.

- U. 1. It makes me hungry.  
 2. It makes me thirsty.  
 3. It makes me sleepy.

- V. 1. A ga a hara'di.  
 2. A ga a dyewa'di.  
 3. A ga a dyirba'di.

- V. 1. It makes him/her hungry.  
 2. It makes him/her thirsty.  
 3. It makes him/her sleepy.

- W. 1. Ni na safaro ha'?  
 Oho. Amma a ga ay hara'di.  
 2. Ni na safaro ha'?  
 Oho. Amma a ga ay dyewa'di.  
 3. Ni na safaro ha'?  
 Oho. Amma a ga ay dyirba'di.

- W. 1. Have you taken the medicine?  
 Yes. But it makes me hungry.  
 2. Have you taken the medicine?  
 Yes. But it makes me thirsty.  
 3. Have you taken the medicine?  
 Yes. But it makes me sleepy.

- X. 1. Ni na a no safaro?  
 Oho. Amma a ga a hara'di.  
 2. Ni na a no safaro?  
 Oho. Amma a ga a dyewa'di.  
 3. Ni na a no safaro?  
 Oho. Amma a ga a dyirba'di.

- X. 1. Have you given him/her the medicine?  
 Yes. But it makes him/her hungry.  
 2. Have you given him/her the medicine?  
 Yes. But it makes him/her thirsty.  
 3. Have you given him/her the medicine?  
 Yes. But it makes him/her sleepy.

UNIT 27

Dialogue 1

A: Za wati fo no ni si'da bani?

A: How long have you been sick?

habo

week (def.)

habo ka' bisa

last week

B: Ay si'da bani za habo ka' bisa.

B: I've been sick since last week.

A: I fo no ni ga?

A: What's the matter with you?

soru

to have diarrhea

B: Ay go ga soru.

B: I have diarrhea.

koro'

to have fever

A: Ni go ga koro'?

A: Do you have a fever?

B: Oho.

B: Yes.

Dialogue 2

A: Za wati fo no a si'da bani?

A: How long has he been sick?

bifo

day before yesterday

B: A si'da bani za bifo.

B: He's been sick since day before yesterday.

A: I fo no a ga?

A: What's the matter with him?

yeri

to vomit

B: A go ga yeri.

B: He vomits.

koto

to cough

A: A go ga koto?

A: Does he cough?

B: Ha'a.

B: No.

Dialogue 3

ma	(signals a polite Imperative sg.)
ka'de	to bring
habu	week (indef.)
bene	above
habu bene	next week

A: Ma ka'de a habu bene.                      A: Bring him (back) next week.

B: Habu bene?                                      B: Next week? .

lokotoro	doctor (indef.)
lokotoro kwara	dispensary (indef.)

A: Oho. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara              A: Yes. Bring him (back) to the dispen-  
habu bene.    sary next week.

Dialogue 4

A: Ma ka alasar.                                      A: Come (back) early this evening.

B: Alasar?    B: Early this evening?

wodin banda	and then, after that
suba si	day after tomorrow

A: Oho. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro              A: Yes. And then come to the dispensary  
kwara suba si.    day after tomorrow.

Dialogue 5

ye	to return
----	-----------

A: Ay ga ye ga ka<sup>1</sup> alula.                      A: I'll come (back) early this after-  
noon.

B: Alula?    B: Early this afternoon?

24.5

ko'da

wone

habu wone ra

A: Oho. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara habu wone ra.

to take, escort

this

this week

A: Yes. And then take him to the dispensary this week.

Note on the Dialogues

1. Literally, ga ye ga ka means "will return and come."

Structural Drill

- A. 1. Za wati fo no ni si'da bani?
- 2. Za wati fo no aran si'da bani?
- 3. Za wati fo no a si'da bani?
- 4. Za wati fo no i si'da bani?

- A. 1. How long have you been sick?
- 2. How long have you been sick?
- 3. How long has he/she been sick?
- 4. How long have they been sick?

- B. 1. Ay si'da bani za bi.
- 2. Ay si'da bani za bifo.
- 3. Ay si'da bani za habo ka'  
bisa.

- B. 1. I've been sick since yesterday.
- 2. I've been sick since day before yesterday.
- 3. I've been sick since last week.

- C. 1. Iri si'da bani za bi.
- 2. Iri si'da bani za bifo.
- 3. Iri si'da bani za habo ka'  
bisa.

- C. 1. We've been sick since yesterday.
- 2. We've been sick since day before yesterday.
- 3. We've been sick since last week.

- D. 1. A si'da bani za bi.
- 2. A si'da bani za bifo.
- 3. A si'da bani za habo ka'  
bisa.

- D. 1. He's/She's been sick since yesterday.
- 2. He's/She's been sick since day before yesterday.
- 3. He's/She's been sick since last week.

- E. 1. I si'da bani za bi.  
 2. I si'da bani za bifo.  
 3. I si'da bani za habo ka' bisa.

- E. 1. They've been sick since yesterday.  
 2. They've been sick since day before yesterday.  
 3. They've been sick since last week.

- F. 1. I fo no ni ga?  
 2. I fo no aran ga?  
 3. I fo no a ga?  
 4. I fo no i ga?

- F. 1. What's the matter with you?  
 2. What's the matter with you?  
 3. What's the matter with him/her?  
 4. What's the matter with them?

- G. 1. Ni go ga soru?  
 2. Aran go ga soru?  
 3. A go ga soru?  
 4. I go ga soru?

- G. 1. Do you have diarrhea?  
 2. Do you have diarrhea?  
 3. Does he/she have diarrhea?  
 4. Do they have diarrhea?

- H. 1. Ni go ga koro'!  
 2. Aran go ga koro'!  
 3. A go ga koro'!  
 4. I go ga koro'!

- H. 1. Do you have a fever?  
 2. Do you have a fever?  
 3. Does he/she have a fever?  
 4. Do they have a fever?

- I. 1. Ni go ga yeri?  
 2. Aran go ga yeri?  
 3. A go ga yeri?  
 4. I go ga yeri?

- I. 1. Do you vomit?  
 2. Do you vomit?  
 3. Does he/she vomit?  
 4. Do they vomit?

- J. 1. Ni go ga koto?  
 2. Aran go ga koto?  
 3. A go ga koto?  
 4. I go ga koto?

- J. 1. Do you cough?  
 2. Do you cough?  
 3. Does he/she cough?  
 4. Do they cough?

- K. 1. Ay go ga soru.  
 2. Ay go ga koro'.  
 3. Ay go ga yeri.  
 4. Ay go ga koto.

- K. 1. I have diarrhea.  
 2. I have a fever.  
 3. I vomit.  
 4. I cough.

- L. 1. Iri go ga soru.
2. Iri go ga koro'.
3. Iri go ga yeri.
4. Iri go ga koto.

- M. 1. A go ga soru.
2. A go ga koro'.
3. A go ga yeri.
4. A go ga koto.

- N. 1. I go ga soru.
2. I go ga koro'.
3. I go ga yeri.
4. I go ga koto.

- O. 1. Ma ka'de a alula.
2. Ma ka'de a alasar.
3. Ma ka'de a suba.

- P. 1. Wodin banda ma ka'de a suba  
si.
2. Wodin banda ma ka'de a habu  
wone ra.
3. Wodin banda ma ka'de a habu  
bene.

- Q. 1. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara  
alula.
2. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara  
alasar.
3. Ma ka'de a lokotoro kwara  
suba.

- L. 1. We have diarrhea.
2. We have a fever.
3. We vomit.
4. We cough.

- M. 1. He/She has diarrhea.
2. He/She have a fever.
3. He/She vomits.
4. He/She coughs.

- N. 1. They have diarrhea.
2. They have a fever.
3. They vomit.
4. They cough.

- O. 1. Bring him/her (back) early this  
afternoon.
2. Bring him/her (back) early this  
evening.
3. Bring him/her (back) tomorrow.

- P. 1. And then bring him/her (back) day  
after tomorrow.
2. And then bring him/her (back) this  
week.
3. And then bring him/her (back) next  
week.

- Q. 1. Bring him/her (back) to the dispen-  
sary early this afternoon.
2. Bring him/her (back) to the dispen-  
sary early this evening.
3. Bring him/her (back) to the dispen-  
sary tomorrow.

- R. 1. Wodin banda ma ka'de a lokoto-  
toro kwara suba si.  
2. Wodin banda ma ka'de a lokoto-  
toro kwara habu wone ra.  
3. Wodin banda ma ka'de a lokoto-  
toro kwara habu bene.

- S. 1. Ma ko'da a alula.  
2. Ma ko'da a alasar.  
3. Ma ko'da a suba.

- T. 1. Wodin banda ma ko'da a suba  
si.  
2. Wodin banda ma ko'da a habu  
wone ra.  
3. Wodin banda ma ko'da a habu  
bene.

- U. 1. Ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara  
alula.  
2. Ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara  
alasar.  
3. Ma ko'da a lokotoro kwara  
suba.

- V. 1. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokoto-  
toro kwara suba si.  
2. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokoto-  
toro kwara habu wone ra.  
3. Wodin banda ma ko'da a lokoto-  
toro kwara habu bene.

- W. 1. Ma ka alula.  
2. Ma ka alasar.  
3. Ma ka suba.

- R. 1. And then bring him/her (back) to  
the dispensary day after tomorrow.  
2. And then bring him/her (back) to  
the dispensary this week.  
3. And then bring him/her (back) to  
the dispensary next week.

- S. 1. Take him/her early this afternoon.  
2. Take him/her early this evening.  
3. Take him/her tomorrow.

- T. 1. And then take him/her day after  
tomorrow.  
2. And then take him/her this week.  
3. And then take him/her next week.

- U. 1. Take him/her to the dispensary  
early this afternoon.  
2. Take him/her to the dispensary  
early this evening.  
3. Take him/her to the dispensary  
tomorrow.

- V. 1. And then take him/her to the dis-  
pensary day after tomorrow.  
2. And then take him/her to the dis-  
pensary this week.  
3. And then take him/her to the dis-  
pensary next week.

- W. 1. Come (back) early this afternoon.  
2. Come (back) early this evening.  
3. Come (back) tomorrow.

- X. 1. Wodin banda ma ka suba si.  
 2. Wodin banda ma ka habu wone ra.  
 3. Wodin banda ma ka habu bene.

- Y. 1. Ma ka lokotoro kwara alula.  
 2. Ma ka lokotoro kwara alasar.  
 3. Ma ka lokotoro kwara suba.

- Z. 1. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro kwara suba si.  
 2. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro kwara habu wone ra.  
 3. Wodin banda ma ka lokotoro kwara habu bene.

- AA. 1. Ay ga ye ga ka alula.  
 2. Ay ga ye ga ka alasar.  
 3. Ay ga ye ga ka suba.

- BB. 1. Iri ga ye ga ka suba si.  
 2. Iri ga ye ga ka habu wone ra.  
 3. Iri ga ye ga ka habu bene.

- CC. 1. A ga ye ga ka alula.  
 2. A ga ye ga ka alasar.  
 3. A ga ye ga ka suba.

- X. 1. And then come (back) day after tomorrow.  
 2. And then come (back) this week.  
 3. And then come (back) next week.

- Y. 1. Come (back) to the dispensary early this afternoon.  
 2. Come (back) to the dispensary early this evening.  
 3. Come (back) to the dispensary tomorrow.

- Z. 1. And then come (back) to the dispensary day after tomorrow.  
 2. And then come (back) to the dispensary this week.  
 3. And then come (back) to the dispensary next week.

- AA. 1. I'll come (back) early this afternoon.  
 2. I'll come (back) early this evening.  
 3. I'll come (back) tomorrow.

- BB. 1. We'll come (back) day after tomorrow.  
 2. We'll come (back) this week.  
 3. We'll come (back) next week.

- CC. 1. He'll/She'll come (back) early this afternoon.  
 2. He'll/She'll come (back) early this evening.  
 3. He'll/She'll come (back) tomorrow.

DD. 1. I ga ye ga ka suba si.

2. I ga ye ga ka habu wone ra.

3. I ga ye ga ka habu bene.

DD. 1. They'll come (back) day after  
tomorrow.

2. They'll come (back) this week.

3. They'll come (back) next week.

UNIT 28

Dialogue 1

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| ya                                     | am/is/are                    |
| zarma                                  | Djerma (def./indef. sg.)     |
| A: Ni ya zarma no?                     | A: Are you a Djerma?         |
| hawsa'tye                              | Hausa (person) (indef, sg.)  |
| B: Ha'a, ay ya hawsa'tye no.           | B: No, I'm a Hausa.          |
| tyew                                   | to study, read               |
| fara'si                                | French (def./indef. sg.)     |
| tyine                                  | language (indef.)            |
| A: Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine?        | A: Are you studying French?  |
| i'gilisi                               | English (indef. sg.)         |
| B: Ha'a, ay go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine? | B: No, I'm studying English. |
| tyewa'di                               | to teach                     |
| A: May no go ga ni tyewa'di?           | A: Who's teaching you?       |
| tyewa'diko                             | teacher (indef.)             |
| B: Ay si'da tyewa'diko.                | B: I don't have a teacher.   |
| hinne                                  | alone                        |
| bo'                                    | oneself                      |
| se                                     | for                          |
| Ay hinne no go ga tyew ay bo' se.      | I'm studying alone.          |

Dialogue 2

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| A: Paul ya fara'si boro no?       | A: Is Paul a Frenchman?  |
| amerike                           | American (indef. sg.)    |
| B: Ha'a, i'ga ya amerike boro no. | B: No, he's an American. |

A: A go ga tyew zarma tyine?

hawsa

B: Ha'a, a go ga tyew hawsa tyine.

A: May no go ga a tyewa'di?

B: A si'da tyewa'diko. I'ga hinne no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.

A: Is he studying Djerma?

Hausa (language) (def./  
indef. sg.)

B: No, he's studying Hausa.

A: Who's teaching him?

B: He doesn't have a teacher. He's studying alone.

### Structural Drills

- A. 1. Ni ya zarma no?  
2. Ni ya hawsa'tye no?  
3. Ni ya fara'si boro no?  
4. Ni ya amerike boro no?

- B. 1. I'ga ya zarma no?  
2. I'ga ya hawsa'tye no?  
3. I'ga ya fara'si boro no?  
4. I'ga ya amerike boro no?

- C. 1. Amina ya zarma no?  
2. Yakuba ya zarma no?  
3. Abdu ya zarma no?  
4. Fatu ya zarma no?

- D. 1. Amina ya hawsa'tye no?  
2. Yakuba ya hawsa'tye no?  
3. Abdu ya hawsa'tye no?  
4. Fatu ya hawsa'tye no?

- A. 1. Are you a Djerma?  
2. Are you a Hausa?  
3. Are you a Frenchman?  
4. Are you an American?

- B. 1. Is he/she a Djerma?  
2. Is he/she a Hausa?  
3. Is he/she a Frenchman?  
4. Is he/she an American?

- C. 1. Is Amina a Djerma?  
2. Is Yakuba a Djerma?  
3. Is Abdu a Djerma?  
4. Is Fatu a Djerma?

- D. 1. Is Amina a Hausa?  
2. Is Yakuba a Hausa?  
3. Is Abdu a Hausa?  
4. Is Fatu a Hausa?

- E. 1. Ay ya zarma no.  
 2. Ay ya hawsa'tye no.  
 3. Ay ya fara'si boro no.  
 4. Ay ya amerike boro no.

- F. 1. I'ga ya zarma no.  
 2. I'ga ya hawsa'tye no.  
 3. I'ga ya fara'si boro no.  
 4. I'ga ya amerike boro no.

- G. 1. Amina ya zarma no.  
 2. Yakuba ya zarma no.  
 3. Abdu ya zarma no.  
 4. Fatu ya zarma no.

- H. 1. Amina ya hawsa'tye no.  
 2. Yakuba ya hawsa'tye no.  
 3. Abdu ya hawsa'tye no.  
 4. Fatu ya hawsa'tye no.

- I. 1. Ni ya zarma no?  
 Ha'a, ay ya hawsa'tye no.  
 2. Ni ya hawsa'tye no?  
 Ha'a, ay ya zarma no.  
 3. Ni ya fara'si boro no?  
 Ha'a, ay ya amerike boro no.  
 4. Ni ya amerike boro no?  
 Ha'a, ay ya fara'si boro no.

- J. 1. I'ga ya zarma no?  
 Ha'a, i'ga ya hawsa'tye no.  
 2. I'ga ya hawsa'tye no?  
 Ha'a, i'ga ya zarma no.  
 3. I'ga ya fara'si boro no?  
 Ha'a, i'ga ya amerike boro no.

- E. 1. I'm a Djerma.  
 2. I'm a Hausa.  
 3. I'm a Frenchman.  
 4. I'm an American.

- F. 1. He's/She's a Djerma.  
 2. He's/She's a Hausa.  
 3. He's/She's a Frenchman.  
 4. He's/She's an American.

- G. 1. Amina is a Djerma.  
 2. Yakuba is a Djerma.  
 3. Abdu is a Djerma.  
 4. Fatu is a Djerma.

- H. 1. Amina is a Hausa.  
 2. Yakuba is a Hausa.  
 3. Abdu is a Hausa.  
 4. Fatu is a Hausa.

- I. 1. Are you a Djerma?  
 No, I'm a Hausa.  
 2. Are you a Hausa?  
 No, I'm a Djerma.  
 3. Are you a Frenchman?  
 No, I'm an American.  
 4. Are you an American?  
 No, I'm a Frenchman.

- J. 1. Is he/she a Djerma?  
 No, he's/she's a Hausa.  
 2. Is he/she a Hausa?  
 No, he's/she's a Djerma.  
 3. Is he/she a Frenchman?  
 No, he's/she's an American.

4. I'ga ya amerike boro no?  
Ha'a, i'ga ya fara'si boro no.

4. Is he/she an American?  
No, he's/she's a Frenchman.

K. 1. Ni go ga tyew zarma tyine?  
2. Ni go ga tyew hawsa tyine?  
3. Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine?  
4. Ni go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?

K. 1. Are you studying Djerma?  
2. Are you studying Hausa?  
3. Are you studying French?  
4. Are you studying English?

L. 1. Ni go ga tyew zarma tyine?  
2. Aran go ga tyew zarma tyine?  
3. A go ga tyew zarma tyine?  
4. I go ga tyew zarma tyine?

L. 1. Are you studying Djerma?  
2. Are you studying Djerma?  
3. Is he/she studying Djerma?  
4. Are they studying Djerma?

M. 1. Ni go ga tyew hawsa tyine?  
2. Aran go ga tyew hawsa tyine?  
3. A go ga tyew hawsa tyine?  
4. I go ga tyew hawsa tyine?

M. 1. Are you studying Hausa?  
2. Are you studying Hausa?  
3. Is he/she studying Hausa?  
4. Are they studying Hausa?

N. 1. Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine?  
2. Aran go ga tyew fara'si tyine?  
3. A go ga tyew fara'si tyine?  
4. I go ga tyew fara'si tyine?

N. 1. Are you studying French?  
2. Are you studying French?  
3. Is he/she studying French?  
4. Are they studying French?

O. 1. Ni go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?  
2. Aran go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?  
3. A go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?  
4. I go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?

O. 1. Are you studying English?  
2. Are you studying English?  
3. Is he/she studying English?  
4. Are they studying English?

P. 1. Ay go ga tyew zarma tyine.  
2. Ay go ga tyew hawsa tyine.  
3. Ay go ga tyew fara'si tyine.  
4. Ay go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.

P. 1. I'm studying Djerma.  
2. I'm studying Hausa.  
3. I'm studying French.  
4. I'm studying English.

Q. 1. Ay go ga tyew zarma tyine.  
2. Iri go ga tyew zarma tyine.  
3. A go ga tyew zarma tyine.  
4. I go ga tyew zarma tyine.

Q. 1. I'm studying Djerma.  
2. We're studying Djerma.  
3. He's/She's studying Djerma.  
4. They're studying Djerma.

- R. 1. Ay go ga tyew hawsa tyine.  
 2. Iri go ga tyew hawsa tyine.  
 3. A go ga tyew hawsa tyine.  
 4. I go ga tyew hawsa tyine.

- S. 1. Ay go ga tyew fara'si tyine.  
 2. Iri go ga tyew fara'si tyine.  
 3. A go ga tyew fara'si tyine.  
 4. I go ga tyew fara'si tyine.

- T. 1. Ay go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.  
 2. Iri go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.  
 3. A go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.  
 4. I go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.

- U. 1. Ni go ga tyew zarma tyine?  
 Ha'a, ay go ga tyew hawsa tyine.  
 2. Aran go ga tyew zarma tyine?  
 Ha'a, iri go ga tyew fara'si tyine.  
 3. A go ga tyew zarma tyine?  
 Ha'a, a go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.

- V. 1. I go ga tyew hawsa tyine?  
 Ha'a, i go ga tyew zarma tyine.  
 2. Ni go ga tyew hawsa tyine?  
 Ha'a, ay go ga tyew fara'si tyine.  
 3. Aran go ga tyew hawsa tyine?  
 Ha'a, iri go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine.

- R. 1. I'm studying Hausa.  
 2. We're studying Hausa.  
 3. He's/She's studying Hausa.  
 4. They're studying Hausa.

- S. 1. I'm studying French.  
 2. We're studying French.  
 3. He's/She's studying French.  
 4. They're studying French.

- T. 1. I'm studying English.  
 2. We're studying English.  
 3. He's/She's studying English.  
 4. They're studying English.

- U. 1. Are you studying Djerma?  
 No, I'm studying Hausa.  
 2. Are you studying Djerma?  
 No, we're studying French.  
 3. Is he/she studying Djerma?  
 No, he's/she's studying English.

- V. 1. Are they studying Hausa?  
 No, they're studying Djerma.  
 2. Are you studying Hausa?  
 No, I'm studying French.  
 3. Are you studying Hausa?  
 No, we're studying English.

W. 1. A go ga tyew fara'si tyine?

Ha'a, a go ga tyew zarma  
tyine.

2. I go ga tyew fara'si tyine?

Ha'a, i go ga tyew hawsa  
tyine.

3. Ni go ga tyew fara'si tyine?

Ha'a, ay go ga tyew i'gilisi  
tyine.

X. 1. Aran go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?

Ha'a, iri go ga tyew zarma  
tyine.

2. A go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?

Ha'a, a go ga tyew hawsa tyine.

3. I go ga tyew i'gilisi tyine?

Ha'a, i go ga tyew fara'si  
tyine.

Y. 1. May no go ga ni tyewa'di?

2. May no go ga aran tyewa'di?

3. May no go ga a tyewa'di?

4. May no go ga i tyewa'di?

Z. 1. May no go ga Amina tyewa'di?

2. May no go ga Yakuba tyewa'di?

3. May no go ga Abdu tyewa'di?

4. May no go ga Fatu tyewa'di?

AA. 1. Ay si'da tyewa'diko.

2. Iri si'da tyewa'diko.

3. A si'da tyewa'diko.

4. I si'da tyewa'diko.

W. 1. Is he/she studying French?

No, he's/she's studying  
Djerma.

2. Are they studying French?

No, they're studying Hausa.

3. Are you studying French?

No, I'm studying English.

X. 1. Are you studying English?

No, we're studying Djerma.

2. Is he/she studying English?

No, he's/she's studying Hausa.

3. Are they studying English?

No, they're studying French.

Y. 1. Who's teaching you?

2. Who's teaching you?

3. Who's teaching him/her?

4. Who's teaching them?

Z. 1. Who's teaching Amina?

2. Who's teaching Yakuba?

3. Who's teaching Abdu?

4. Who's teaching Fatu?

AA. 1. I don't have a teacher.

2. We don't have a teacher.

3. He/She doesn't have a teacher.

4. They don't have a teacher.

- BB. 1. Amina si'da tyewa'diko.  
 2. Yakuba si'da tyewa'diko.  
 3. Abdu si'da tyewa'diko.  
 4. Fatu si'da tyewa'diko.

- BB. 1. Amina doesn't have a teacher.  
 2. Yakuba doesn't have a teacher.  
 3. Abdu doesn't have a teacher.  
 4. Fatu doesn't have a teacher.

- CC. 1. Ay hinne no go ga tyew  
       ay bo' se.  
 2. Iri hinne no go ga tyew  
       iri bo' se.  
 3. I'ga hinne no go ga tyew  
       i'ga bo' se.  
 4. I'gey hinne no go ga tyew  
       i'gey bo' se.

- CC. 1. I'm studying alone.  
 2. We're studying alone.  
 3. He's/She's studying alone.  
 4. They're studying alone.

- DD. 1. Amina hinne no go ga tyew  
       i'ga bo' se.  
 2. Yakuba hinne no go ga tyew  
       i'ga bo' se.  
 3. Abdu hinne no go ga tyew  
       i'ga bo' se.  
 4. Fatu hinne no go ga tyew  
       i'ga bo' se.

- DD. 1. Amina is studying alone.  
 2. Yakuba is studying alone.  
 3. Abdu is studying alone.  
 4. Fatu is studying alone.

- EE. 1. May no go ga ni tyewa'di?  
       Ay si'da tyewa'diko. Ay hinne  
       no go ga tyew ay bo' se.  
 2. May no go ga aran tyewa'di?  
       Iri si'da tyewa'diko. Iri hinne  
       no go ga tyew iri bo' se.  
 3. May no ga Amina tyewa'di?  
       A si'da tyewa'diko. I'ga hinne  
       no go ga tyew i'ga bo' se.

- EE. 1. Who's teaching you?  
       I don't have a teacher. I'm  
       studying alone.  
 2. Who's teaching you?  
       We don't have a teacher. We're  
       studying alone.  
 3. Who's teaching Amina?  
       She doesn't have a teacher.  
       She's studying alone.

UNIT 29

Dialogue 1

marga  
wati kulu  
A: Bakari ga koy wati kulu marga  
fuwo do?

ba  
tye  
B: A si koy ba tye fo.

A: Ni ga koy wati kulu?

B: Ay ga koy wati kulu.

meeting (def./indef.)  
always, any time

A: Does Bakari always go to the  
meeting hall?

even  
time, occasion (indef.)  
B: He never goes.

A: Do you always go?

B: I always go.

Dialogue 2

hay  
hay fo  
A: Ay ga ba hay fo ga tyew.  
hin  
tira  
no'gu  
no'gu fo  
Ay ga hin ga tira wane dey  
no'gu fo?

no'gu kulu  
B: Ni si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.  
hi  
hay kulu  
Amma ni ga hin ga hi hay kulu  
ka' go iri se<sup>1</sup> ne.

thing (indef.)  
something  
A: I want something to read.  
can/may  
book (def./indef.)  
place (indef.)  
somewhere  
Can I buy this book somewhere?

anywhere, everywhere  
B: You can't buy it anywhere.  
to borrow  
anything, everything  
But you may borrow anything we  
have here.

Dialogue 3

A: Ay tyew hay kulu ka' go iri se  
ne. Ay ga hin ga tira wone hi?

A: I've read everything we have here.  
May I borrow this book?

B: Ni ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.

B: You may borrow it any time.

Dialogue 4

A: Ay si 'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.  
labari  
labari tira  
Ay ga hin ga labari tira wone  
dey no'gu kulu?

A: I have nothing to read.  
news (indef. sg.)  
newspaper (def./indef. sg.)  
Can I buy this newspaper anywhere?

B: Ni ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.

B: You can buy it everywhere.

Dialogue 5

wani  
boro fo

to know, speak  
someone

A: Ni kwara boro fo ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?

A: Does someone speak English in your  
village?

boro kulu

anyone

B: Ha'a, ay kwara boro kulu si  
wani i'gilisi tyine.

B: No, no one speaks English in my  
village.

Dialogue 6

A: Aran kwara boro kulu ga wani  
fara'si tyine?

A: Does anyone speak French in your  
village?

borey  
borey kulu

people (def.)  
everyone

E: Oho, iri kwara borey kulu ga  
wani fara'si tyine.

B: Yes, everyone speaks French in our  
village.

## Note on the Dialogues

1. ga se has the meaning "to have."

## Structural Drills

- A. 1. Ni ga koy wati kulu  
marga fuwo do?  
2. Aran ga koy wati kulu  
marga fuwo do?  
3. A ga koy wati kulu  
marga fuwo do?  
4. I ga koy wati kulu  
marga fuwo do?
- A. 1. Do you always go to the meeting  
hall?  
2. Do you always go to the meeting  
hall?  
3. Does he/she always go to the  
meeting hall?  
4. Do they always go to the meeting  
hall?
- B. 1. Bakari ga koy wati kulu  
marga?  
2. Maman ga koy wati kulu  
marga?  
3. Amina ga koy wati kulu  
marga?  
4. Abdu ga koy wati kulu  
marga?
- B. 1. Does Bakari always go to the  
meeting?  
2. Does Maman always go to the  
meeting?  
3. Does Amina always go to the  
meeting?  
4. Does Abdu always go to the meeting?
- C. 1. Ay ga koy wati kulu.  
2. Iri ga koy wati kulu.  
3. A ga koy wati kulu.  
4. I ga koy wati kulu.
- C. 1. I always go.  
2. We always go.  
3. He/She always goes.  
4. They always go.
- D. 1. Bakari ga koy wati kulu.  
2. Maman ga koy wati kulu.  
3. Amina ga koy wati kulu.  
4. Abdu ga koy wati kulu.
- D. 1. Bakari always goes.  
2. Maman always goes.  
3. Amina always goes.  
4. Abdu always goes.

- E. 1. Ay si koy ba tye fo.  
2. Iri si koy ba tye fo.  
3. A si koy ba tye fo.  
4. I si koy ba tye fo.

- F. 1. Bakari si kóy ba tye fo.  
2. Maman si koy ba tye fo.  
3. Amina si koy ba tye fo.  
4. Abdu si koy ba tye fo.

- G. 1. Ay ga ba hay fo ga tyew.  
2. Iri ga ba hay fo ga tyew.  
3. A ga ba hay fo ga tyew.  
4. I ga ba hay fo ga tyew.

- H. 1. Bakari ga ba hay fo ga tyew.  
2. Maman ga ba hay fo ga tyew.  
3. Amina ga ba hay fo ga tyew.  
4. Abdu ga ba hay fo ga tyew.

- I. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?  
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?  
3. A ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?  
4. I ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?

- J. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?  
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?

- E. 1. I never go.  
2. We never go.  
3. He/She never goes.  
4. They never go.

- F. 1. Bakari never goes.  
2. Maman never goes.  
3. Amina never goes.  
4. Abdu never goes.

- G. 1. I want something to read.  
2. We want something to read.  
3. He/She wants something to read.  
4. They want something to read.

- H. 1. Bakari wants something to read.  
2. Maman wants something to read.  
3. Amina wants something to read.  
4. Abdu wants something to read.

- I. 1. Can I buy this book somewhere?  
2. Can we buy this book somewhere?  
3. Can he/she buy this book somewhere?  
4. Can they buy this book somewhere?

- J. 1. Can I buy this book everywhere?  
2. Can we buy this book everywhere?

3. A ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?
4. I ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?

3. Can he/she buy this book everywhere?
4. Can they buy this book everywhere?

- K. 1. Ni ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
2. Aran ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
3. A ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
4. I ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.

- K. 1. You can buy it everywhere.
2. You can buy it everywhere.
3. He/She can buy it everywhere.
4. They can buy it everywhere.

- L. 1. Ni si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
2. Aran si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
3. A si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
4. I si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.

- L. 1. You can't buy it anywhere.
2. You can't buy it anywhere.
3. He/She can't buy it anywhere.
4. They can't buy it anywhere.

- M. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu fo?  
Ni ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone dey no'gu kulu?  
Aran si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.

- M. 1. Can I buy this book somewhere?  
You can buy it everywhere.
2. Can we buy this book everywhere?  
You can't buy it anywhere.

3. A ga hin ga tira wone dey  
no'gu fo?

A si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.

4. I ga hin ga tira wone dey  
no'gu kulu?

I ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.

N. 1. Amma ni ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go iri se ne.

2. Amma aran ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go iri se ne.

3. Amma a ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go iri se ne.

4. Amma i ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go iri se ne.

O. 1. Amma Bakari ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go ay se ne.

2. Amma Maman ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go ay se ne.

3. Amma Amina ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go ay se ne.

4. Amma Abdu ga hin ga hi hay  
kulu ka' go ay se ne.

P. 1. Ay tyew hay kulu ka' go  
iri se ne.

2. Iri tyew hay kulu ka' go  
iri se ne.

3. A tyew hay kulu ka' go  
iri se ne.

4. I tyew hay kulu ka' go  
iri se ne.

3. Can he/she buy this book some-  
where?

He/She can't buy it anywhere.

4. Can they buy this book anywhere?

They can buy it everywhere.

N. 1. But you may borrow anything we  
have here.

2. But you may borrow anything we  
have here.

3. But he/she may borrow anything  
we have here.

4. But they may borrow anything we  
have here.

O. 1. But Bakari may borrow anything  
I have here.

2. But Maman may borrow anything I  
have here.

3. But Amina may borrow anything I  
have here.

4. But Abdu may borrow anything I  
have here.

P. 1. I've read everything we have  
here.

2. We've read everything we have  
here.

3. He's/She's read everything we  
have here.

4. They've read everything we have  
here.

- Q. 1. Bakari tyew hay kulu ka' go  
a se ne.
2. Maman tyew hay kulu ka' go  
a se ne.
3. Amina tyew hay kulu ka' go  
a se ne.
4. Abdu tyew hay kulu ka' go  
a se ne.

- R. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone hi?
2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone hi?
3. A ga hin ga tira wone hi?
4. I ga hin ga tira wone hi?

- S. 1. Ay ga hin ga a hi?
2. Iri ga hin ga a hi?
3. A ga hin ga a hi?
4. I ga hin ga a hi?

- T. 1. Ni ga hin ga tira wone hi  
wati kulu.
2. Aran ga hin ga tira wone hi  
wati kulu.
3. A ga hin ga tira wone hi  
wati kulu.
4. I ga hin ga tira wone hi  
wati kulu.

- U. 1. Ni ga hin ga a hi wati  
kulu.
2. Aran ga hin ga a hi wati  
kulu.
3. A ga hin ga a hi wati  
kulu.
4. I ga hin ga a hi wati  
kulu.

- Q. 1. Bakari has read everything he  
has here.
2. Maman has read everything he  
has here.
3. Amina has read everything she  
has here.
4. Abdu has read everything he has  
here.

- R. 1. May I borrow this book?
2. May we borrow this book?
3. May he/she borrow this book?
4. May they borrow this book?

- S. 1. May I borrow it?
2. May we borrow it?
3. May he/she borrow it?
4. May they borrow it?

- T. 1. You may borrow this book any  
time.
2. You may borrow this book any  
time.
3. He/She may borrow this book any  
time.
4. They may borrow this book any  
time.

- U. 1. You may borrow it any time.
2. You may borrow it any time.
3. He/She may borrow it any time.
4. They may borrow it any time.

V. 1. Ay ga hin ga tira wone hi?  
Ni ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.

2. Iri ga hin ga tira wone hi?  
Aran ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.

3. A ga hin ga tira wone hi?  
A ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.

4. I ga hin ga tira wone hi?  
I ga hin ga a hi wati kulu.

W. 1. Ay si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.

2. Iri si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.

3. A si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.

4. I si'da hay kulu ka' ga tyew.

X. 1. Bakari si'da hay kulu ka' ga  
tyew.

2. Maman si'da hay kulu ka' ga  
tyew.

3. Amina si'da hay kulu ka' ga  
tyew.

4. Abdu si'da hay kulu ka' ga  
tyew.

Y. 1. Ay ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?

2. Iri ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?

3. A ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?

4. I ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?

V. 1. May I borrow this book?  
You may borrow it any time.

2. May we borrow this book?  
You may borrow it any time.

3. May he/she borrow this book?  
He/She may borrow it any time.

4. May they borrow this book?  
They may borrow it any time.

W. 1. I have nothing to read.

2. We have nothing to read.

3. He/She has nothing to read.

4. They have nothing to read.

X. 1. Bakari has nothing to read.

2. Maman has nothing to read.

3. Amina has nothing to read.

4. Abdu has nothing to read.

Y. 1. Can I buy this newspaper any-  
where?

2. Can we buy this newspaper any-  
where?

3. Can he/she buy this newspaper  
anywhere?

4. Can they buy this newspaper  
anywhere?

- Z. 1. Ay ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?
2. Iri ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?
3. A ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?
4. I ga hin ga a dey no'gu kulu?

- AA. 1. Mi ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu.
2. Aran ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu.
3. A ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu.
4. I ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu.

- BB. 1. Mi ga hin ga a dey no'gu  
kulu.
2. Aran ga hin ga a dey no'gu  
kulu.
3. A ga hin ga a dey no'gu  
kulu.
4. I ga hin ga a dey no'gu  
kulu.

- CC. 1. Ay ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?  
Mi si hiñ ga a dey no'gu kulu.
2. Iri ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?  
Aran si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
3. A ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?  
A si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.
4. I ga hin ga labari tira  
wone dey no'gu kulu?  
I si hin ga a dey no'gu kulu.

- Z. 1. Can I buy it anywhere?
2. Can we buy it anywhere?
3. Can he/she buy it anywhere?
4. Can they buy it anywhere?

- AA. 1. You can buy this newspaper  
everywhere.
2. You can buy this newspaper  
everywhere.
3. He/She can buy this newspaper  
everywhere.
4. They can buy this newspaper  
everywhere.

- BB. 1. You can buy it everywhere.
2. You can buy it everywhere.
3. He/She can buy it everywhere.
4. They can buy it everywhere.

- CC. 1. Can I buy this newspaper  
everywhere?  
You can't buy it anywhere.
2. Can we buy this newspaper  
everywhere?  
You can't buy it anywhere.
3. Can he/she buy this newspaper  
everywhere?  
He/She can't buy it anywhere.
4. Can they buy this newspaper  
everywhere?  
They can't buy it anywhere.

- DD. 1. Ni kwara boro fo ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?
2. Ni kwara boro kulu ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?
3. Ni kwara boro kulu si wani  
i'gilisi tyine?
4. Ni kwara borey kulu ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?

- EE. 1. I kwara boro fo ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?
2. I kwara boro kulu ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?
3. I kwara boro kulu si wani  
i'gilisi tyine?
4. I kwara borey kulu ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?

- FF. 1. Ay kwara boro kulu si wani  
fara'si tyine.
2. Iri kwara boro kulu si wani  
fara'si tyine.
3. A kwara boro kulu si wani  
fara'si tyine.
4. I kwara boro kulu si wani  
fara'si tyine.

- GG. 1. Ay kwara borey kulu ga wani  
fara'si tyine.
2. Iri kwara borey kulu ga wani  
fara'si tyine.
3. A kwara borey kulu ga wani  
fara'si tyine.
4. I kwara borey kulu ga wani  
fara'si tyine.

- DD. 1. Does someone speak English in  
your village?
2. Does anyone speak English in  
your village?
3. Does no one speak English in  
your village?
4. Does everyone speak English  
in your village?

- EE. 1. Does someone speak English in  
their village?
2. Does anyone speak English in  
their village?
3. Does no one speak English in  
their village?
4. Does everyone speak English  
in their village?

- FF. 1. No one speaks French in my  
village.
2. No one speaks French in our  
village.
3. No one speaks French in his/  
her village.
4. No one speaks French in their  
village.

- GG. 1. Everyone speaks French in my  
village.
2. Everyone speaks French in our  
village.
3. Everyone speaks French in his/  
her village.
4. Everyone speaks French in  
their village.

- HH. 1. Ni kwara boro fo ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?  
Ay kwara boro kulu si wani  
i'gilisi tyine.
2. Aran kwara borb kulu ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine?  
Iri kwara borey kulu ga wani  
i'gilisi tyine.
3. A kwara boro fo ga wani  
fara'si tyine?  
A kwara boro kulu si wani  
fara'si tyine.
4. I kwara boro kulu ga wani  
fara'si tyine?  
I kwara borey kulu ga wani  
fara'si tyine.

- HH. 1. Does someone speak English in  
your village?  
No one speaks English in my  
village.
2. Does anyone speak English in  
your village?  
Everyone speaks English in  
our village.
3. Does someone speak French in  
his/her village?  
No one speaks French in his/  
her village.
4. Does anyone speak French in  
their village?  
Everyone speaks French in  
their village.

UNIT 30  
Dialogue 1

hala

lamba

A: Hala lamba mardye no ni na  
tira tyew?

B: Ay na a tyew hala lamba  
woro'ka.

wasu

A: A mana wasu.

hala kayna

B: Ay si hin ga tyew kala hala  
kayna.

gumo

wati ka'

A: Ni si wani gumo kala wati ka'  
ni tyew gumo.

B: Hambara. Amma Bakari ga wani  
gumo, ba ka' a mana tyew  
gumo.

za son'o

A: Cho, Bakari ga wani gumo za  
son'o.

up to, until

number (def./indef.)

A: To what page have you read in the  
book?

B: I've read to page twenty in it.

to be enough

A: It's not enough.

until later, tonight

B: I can't study until tonight.

a lot, much

when

A: You won't know much until you've  
read a lot.

B: Maybe. But Bakari knows a lot, even  
though he hasn't read a lot.

already

A: Yes, Bakari knows a lot already.

## Dialogue 2

de  
A: De ni ga tyew gumo, ni ga wani  
gumo.

ma  
wodin se  
B: Ay ga ba ay ma wani gumo,  
wodin se no ay ga tyew gumo.

sama  
Amma ay si hin ga tyew hala  
kayna, zama ay si du tira.

fu  
A: De ni ga ba, ay ga ka'de ni se  
tira wati ka' ay to fu.

fo  
B: Fo nda goy.<sup>1</sup>

A: Kala nda to'ton.

B: Kala nda to'ton.

if  
A: If you read a lot, you'll know a  
lot.

(signals a dependent clause  
following a verb of emotion)  
so, therefore

B: I want to know a lot, so I read a  
lot.

because  
But I can't study tonight, because  
I won't have a book.

home (indef.)  
A: If you like, I'll bring you a book  
when I get home.

greeting (def./indef.)  
B: Thank you.

A: Goodbye.

B: Goodbye.

### Note on the Dialogues

1. Literally, "a greeting to your work."

### Structural Drills

1. Hala lamba madye no ni na  
tira tyew?
2. Hala lamba madye no aran na  
tira tyew?

1. To what page have you read in  
the book?
2. To what page have you read in  
the book?

3. Hala lamba mardye no a na tira tyew?

4. Hala lamba mardye no i na tira tyew?

B. 1. Ay na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.

2. Iri na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.

3. A na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.

4. I na a tyew hala lamba woro'ka.

C. 1. Ay ga wani gumo za son'o.

2. Iri ga wani gumo za son'o.

3. A ga wani gumo za son'o.

4. I ga wani gumo za son'o.

5. Abdu ga wani gumo za son'o.

D. 1. Ay si wani gumo za son'o.

2. Iri si wani gumo za son'o.

3. A si wani gumo za son'o.

4. I si wani gumo za son'o.

5. Abdu si wani gumo za son'o.

E. 1. Ni ga wani gumo wati ka' ni tyew gumo.

2. Aran ga wani gumo wati ka' aran tyew gumo.

3. A ga wani gumo wati ka' a tyew gumo.

4. I ga wani gumo wati ka' i tyew gumo.

5. Abdu ga wani gumo wati ka' a tyew gumo.

3. To what page has he/she read in the book?

4. To what page have they read in the book?

B. 1. I've read to page twenty.

2. We've read to page twenty.

3. He's/She's read to page twenty.

4. They've read to page twenty.

C. 1. I know a lot already.

2. We know a lot already.

3. He/She knows a lot already.

4. They know a lot already.

5. Abdu knows a lot already.

D. 1. I don't know much yet.

2. We don't know much yet.

3. He/She doesn't know much yet.

4. They don't know much yet.

5. Abdu doesn't know much yet.

E. 1. You'll know a lot when you've read a lot.

2. You'll know a lot when you've read a lot.

3. He'll/She'll know a lot when he's/she's read a lot.

4. They'll know a lot when they've read a lot.

5. Abdu will know a lot when he's read a lot.

- F. 1. Ni si wani gumo kala wati  
ka' ni tyew gumo.
2. Aran si wani gumo kala wati  
ka' aran tyew gumo.
3. A si wani gumo kala wati  
ka' a tyew gumo.
4. I si wani gumo kala wati  
ka' i tyew gumo.
5. Abdu si wani gumo kala wati  
ka' a tyew gumo.

- F. 1. You won't know much until  
you've read a lot.
2. You won't know much until  
you've read a lot.
3. He/She won't know much until  
he's/she's read a lot.
4. They won't know much until  
they've read a lot.
5. Abdu won't know much until  
he's read a lot.

- G. 1. Ni ga wani gumo zama ni  
ga tyew gumo.
2. Aran ga wani gumo zama aran  
ga tyew gumo.
3. A ga wani gumo zama a  
ga tyew gumo.
4. I ga wani gumo zama i  
ga tyew gumo.
5. Abdu ga wani gumo zama a  
ga tyew gumo.

- G. 1. You know a lot because you  
read a lot.
2. You know a lot because you  
read a lot.
3. He/She knows a lot because he/  
she reads a lot.
4. They know a lot because they  
read a lot.
5. Abdu knows a lot because he  
reads a lot.

- H. 1. Ay si wani gumo zama ay si  
tyew gumo.
2. Iri si wani gumo zama iri si  
tyew gumo.
3. A si wani gumo zama a si  
tyew gumo.
4. I si wani gumo zama i si  
tyew gumo.
5. Abdu si wani gumo zama a si  
tyew gumo.

- H. 1. I don't know much because I  
don't read much.
2. We don't know much because  
we don't read much.
3. He/She doesn't know much be-  
cause he/she doesn't read  
much.
4. They don't know much because  
they don't read much.
5. Abdu doesn't know much be-  
cause he doesn't read much.

- I. 1. Ni ga tyew gumo, wodin se  
no ni ga wani gumo.
2. Aran ga tyew gumo, wodin se  
no aran ga wani gumo.
3. A ga tyew gumo, wodin se  
no a ga wani gumo.
4. I ga tyew gumo, wodin se  
no i ga wani gumo.
5. Abdu ga tyew gumo, wodin se  
no a ga wani gumo.

- J. 1. Ay si tyew gumo, wodin se  
no ay si wani gumo.
2. Iri si tyew gumo, wodin se  
no iri si wani gumo.
3. A si tyew gumo, wodin se  
no a si wani gumo.
4. I si tyew gumo, wodin se  
no i si wani gumo.
5. Abdu si tyew gumo, wodin se  
no a si wani gumo.

- K. 1. Ay si wani gumo, wodin se  
no ay ga tyew gumo.
2. Iri si wani gumo, wodin se  
no iri ga tyew gumo.
3. A si wani gumo, wodin se  
no a ga tyew gumo.
4. I si wani gumo, wodin se  
no i ga tyew gumo.
5. Abdu si wani gumo, wodin se  
no a ga tyew gumo.

- I. 1. You read a lot, so you know a  
lot.
2. You read a lot, so you know a  
lot.
3. He/She reads a lot, so he/she  
knows a lot.
4. They read a lot, so they know a  
lot.
5. Abdu reads a lot, so he knows a  
lot.

- J. 1. I don't read much, so I don't  
know much.
2. We don't read much, so we don't  
know much.
3. He/She doesn't read much, so he/  
she doesn't know much.
4. They don't read much, so they  
don't know much.
5. Abdu doesn't read much, so he  
doesn't know much.

- K. 1. I don't know much, so I don't  
read much.
2. We don't know much, so we don't  
read much.
3. He/She doesn't know much, so he/  
she doesn't read much.
4. They don't know much, so they  
don't read much.
5. Abdu doesn't know much, so he  
doesn't read much.

- L. 1. Ay si wani gumo, ba ka' ay tyew gumo.
2. Iri si wani gumo, ba ka' iri tyew gumo.
3. A si wani gumo, ba ka' a tyew gumo.
4. I si wani gumo, ba ka' i tyew gumo.
5. Abdu si wani gumo, ba ka' a tyew gumo.

- M. 1. Ni ga wani gumo, ba ka' ni mana tyew gumo.
2. Aran ga wani gumo, ba ka' aran mana tyew gumo.
3. A ga wani gumo, ba ka' a mana tyew gumo.
4. I ga wani gumo, ba ka' i mana tyew gumo.
5. Abdu ga wani gumo, ba ka' a mana tyew gumo.

- N. 1. Ay ga ba ay ma wani gumo, wodin se no ay ga tyew gumo.
2. Iri ga ba iri ma wani gumo, wodin se no iri ga tyew gumo.
3. A ga ba a ma wani gumo, wodin se no a ga tyew gumo.
4. I ga ba i ma wani gumo, wodin se no i ga tyew gumo.
5. Abdu ga ba a ma wani gumo, wodin se no a ga tyew gumo.

- L. 1. I don't know much, even though I read a lot.
2. We don't know much, even though we read a lot.
3. He/She doesn't know much, even though he/she reads a lot.
4. They don't know much, even though they read a lot.
5. Abdu doesn't know much, even though he reads a lot.

- M. 1. You know a lot, even though you don't read much.
2. You know a lot, even though you don't read much.
3. He/She knows a lot, even though he/she doesn't read much.
4. They know a lot, even though they don't read much.
5. Abdu knows a lot, even though he doesn't read much.

- N. 1. I want to know a lot, so I read a lot.
2. We want to know a lot, so we read a lot.
3. He/She wants to know a lot, so he/she reads a lot.
4. They want to know a lot, so they read a lot.
5. Abdu wants to know a lot, so he reads a lot.

0. 1. Ay ga tyew gump, zama ay ga ba ay ma wani gump.
2. Iri ga tyew gump, zama iri ga ba iri ma wani gump.
3. A ga tyew gump, zama a ga ba a ma wani gump.
4. I ga tyew gump, zama i ga ba i ma wani gump.
5. Abdu ga tyew gump, zama a ga ba a ma wani gump.

- P. 1. Ni si tyew gump, ba ni ga ba ni ma wani gump.
2. Aran si tyew gump, ba aran ga ba aran ma wani gump.
3. A si tyew gump, ba a ga ba a ma wani gump.
4. I si tyew gump, ba i ga ba i ma wani gump.
5. Abdu si tyew gump, ba a ga ba a ma wani gump.

- Q. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew hala kayna.
2. Iri si hin ga tyew hala kayna.
3. A si hin ga tyew hala kayna.
4. I si hin ga tyew hala kayna.
5. Abdu si hin ga tyew hala kayna.

- R. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.
2. Iri si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.
3. A si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.

0. 1. I read a lot, because I want to know a lot.
2. We read a lot, because we want to know a lot.
3. He/She reads a lot, because he/she wants to know a lot.
4. They read a lot, because they want to know a lot.
5. Abdu reads a lot, because he wants to know a lot.

- P. 1. You don't read much, even though you want to know a lot.
2. You don't read much, even though you want to know a lot.
3. He/She doesn't read much, even though he/she wants to know a lot.
4. They don't read much, even though they want to know a lot.
5. Abdu doesn't read much, even though he wants to know a lot.

- Q. 1. I can't study tonight.
2. We can't study tonight.
3. He/She can't study tonight.
4. They can't study tonight.
5. Abdu can't study tonight.

- R. 1. I can't study until tonight.
2. We can't study until tonight.
3. He/She can't study until tonight.

4. I si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.

5. Abdu si hin ga tyew kala hala kayna.

S. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' ay to fu.

2. Iri si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' iri to fu.

3. A si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a to fu.

4. I si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' i to fu.

5. Abdu si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a to fu.

T. 1. Ni ga hin ga tyew wati ka' ni to fu.

2. Aran ga hin ga tyew wati ka' aran to fu.

3. A ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a to fu.

4. I ga hin ga tyew wati ka' i to fu.

5. Abdu ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a to fu.

U. 1. Ay ga hin ga tyew wati ka' ay du tira.

2. Iri ga hin ga tyew wati ka' iri du tira.

3. A ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a du tira.

4. They can't study until tonight.

5. Abdu can't study until tonight.

S. 1. I can't study until I get home.

2. We can't study until we get home.

3. He/She can't study until he/she gets home.

4. They can't study until they get home.

5. Abdu can't study until he gets home.

T. 1. You can study when you get home.

2. You can study when you get home.

3. He/She can study when he/she gets home.

4. They can study when they get home.

5. Abdu can study when he gets home.

U. 1. I can study when I have a book.

2. We can study when we have a book.

3. He/She can study when he/she has a book.

4. I ga hin ga tyew wati ka' i du tira.

5. Abdu ga hin ga tyew wati ka' a du tira.

V. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' ay du tira.

2. Iri si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' iri du tira.

3. A si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a du tira.

4. I si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' i du tira.

5. Abdu si hin ga tyew kala wati ka' a du tira.

W. 1. Ay si hin ga tyew zama ay si du tira.

2. Iri si hin ga tyew zama iri si du tira.

3. A si hin ga tyew zama a si du tira.

4. I si hin ga tyew zama i si du tira.

5. Abdu si hin ga tyew zama a si du tira.

X. 1. Ay si du tira, wodin se no ay si hin ga tyew.

2. Iri si du tira, wodin se no iri si hin ga tyew.

3. A si du tira, wodin se no a si hin ga tyew.

4. They can study when they have a book.

5. Abdu can study when he has a book.

V. 1. I can't study until I have a book.

2. We can't study until we have a book.

3. He/She can't study until he/she has a book.

4. They can't study until they have a book.

5. Abdu can't study until he has a book.

W. 1. I can't study because I don't have a book.

2. We can't study because we don't have a book.

3. He/She can't study because he/she doesn't have a book.

4. They can't study because they don't have a book.

5. Abdu can't study because he doesn't have a book.

X. 1. I don't have a book, so I can't study.

2. We don't have a book, so we can't study.

3. He/She doesn't have a book, so he/she can't study.

4. I si du tira, wodin se no  
i si hin ga tyew.

5. Abdu si du tira, wodin se no  
a si hin ga tyew.

Y. 1. De ni ga ba, ay ga ka'de  
ni se tira hala kayna.

2. De ni ga ba, iri ga ka'de  
ni se tira hala kayna.

3. De ni ga ba, a ga ka'de  
ni se tira hala kayna.

4. De ni ga ba, i ga ka'de  
ni se tira hala kayna.

5. De ni ga ba, Abdu ga ka'de  
ni se tira hala kayna.

Z. 1. De aran ga ba, ay ga ka'de  
aran se tira wati ka' ay  
to fu.

2. De aran ga ba, iri ga ka'de  
aran se tira wati ka' iri  
to fu.

3. De aran ga ba, a ga ka'de  
aran se tira wati ka' a  
to fu.

4. De aran ga ba, i ga ka'de  
aran se tira wati ka' i  
to fu.

5. De aran ga ba, Abdu ga ka'de  
aran se tira wati ka' a  
to fu.

AA. 1. De ni ga tyew gumo, ni ga  
wani gumo.

2. De aran ga tyew gumo, aran  
ga wani gumo.

4. They don't have a book, so they  
can't study.

5. Abdu doesn't have a book, so  
he can't study.

Y. 1. If you like, I'll bring you a  
book tonight.

2. If you like, we'll bring you a  
book tonight.

3. If you like, he'll/she'll bring  
you a book tonight.

4. If you like, they'll bring you  
a book tonight.

5. If you like, Abdu will bring  
you a book tonight.

Z. 1. If you like, I'll bring you a  
book when I get home.

2. If you like, we'll bring you a  
book when we get home.

3. If you like, he'll/she'll bring  
you a book when he/she gets  
home.

4. If you like, they'll bring you  
a book when they get home.

5. If you like, Abdu will bring you  
a book when he gets home.

AA. 1. If you read a lot, you'll know  
a lot.

2. If you read a lot, you'll know  
a lot.

3. De a ga tyew gumo, a ga wani gumo.

4. De i ga tyew gumo, i ga wani gumo.

5. De Abdu ga tyew gumo, a ga wani gumo.

BB. 1. De ni si tyew gumo, ni si wani gumo.

2. De aran si tyew gumo, aran si wani gumo.

3. De a si tyew gumo, a si wani gumo.

4. De i si tyew gumo, i si wani gumo.

5. De Abdu si tyew gumo, a si wani gumo.

3. If he/she reads a lot, he'll/she'll know a lot.

4. If they read a lot, they'll know a lot.

5. If Abdu reads a lot, he'll know a lot.

BB. 1. If you don't read much, you won't know much.

2. If you don't read much, you won't know much.

3. If he/she doesn't read much, he/she won't know much.

4. If they don't read much, they won't know much.

5. If Abdu doesn't read much, he won't know much.

DJERMA-ENGLISH-FRENCH GLOSSARY

a	1	he/she/it	il/elle
a	4	him/her	le/la/lui
a	6	his/her	son/sa/ses
aduha	20	late morning (indef.)	matin (dernière partie)
ahakku	19	eight	huit
alamisi	20	Thursday (indef.)	jeudi
alarba	20	Wednesday (indef.)	mercredi
alasar	20	early evening (indef.)	soir (première partie)
alborey	22	men (def.)	hommes
alfari	14	farmer (indef.)	cultivateur
alfaza	20	very early morning (indef.)	matin (très tôt)
alhadi	20	Sunday (indef.)	dimanche
almari	20	late evening (indef.)	soir (dernière partie)
alula	20	late afternoon (indef.)	après-midi (tard)
alwati	20	time (indef. sg.)	temps
amerike	28	American (indef. sg.)	américain
anna	19	but	mais
arani	4	you (pl. object)	vous
aran	1	you (pl. subject)	vous
aran	6	your (pl.)	votre/vos
arne	6	brother of a female (def./indef.)	frère d'une femelle
asipti	20	Saturday (indef.)	samedi
atalata	20	Tuesday (indef.)	mardi
atinni	20	Monday (indef.)	lundi
ay	1	I	je
ay	4	me	me/moi
ay	6	my	mon/ma/mes
ba	23	even	même

ba	29	to want, need	vouloir, avoir besoin de
baba	6	father (indef.)	père
babo	6	father (def.)	père
pan	18	to end	finir
bana	23	to pay	payer
banda	22	with	avec
bani	1	health (indef.)	santé
bari	19	horse (indef.)	cheval
benā	20	sky (def.)	ciel
bene	27	above	au-dessus
besi	7	big (indef. sg.)	grand
bero	3	big (def. sg.)	grand
bero	25	elder brother/sister (def.)	ainé/ainée
bi	2	yesterday	hier
bifo	27	day before yesterday	avant-hier
bisa	20	to pass, be past	passer
bo'	13	on	sur
bo'	28	oneself	soi-même
bobo	16	a lot, much, many	beaucoup
borey	29	people (def.)	gens
borey kulu	29	everyone	tout le monde
bori	10	pretty, good (indef. sg.)	joli, bon
boro	13	person, one (indef.)	on, (une) personne
boro fo	29	someone	quelqu'un
boro kulu	29	anyone	n'importe qui
bu	16	to die	mourir
bumbey	21	oneself (def. pl.)	soi-même
bumbo	21	oneself (def.)	soi-même
buru	23	bread (indef. sg.)	pain
buru	20	cloud (indef.)	nuage
da	13	(emphasizes the manner of an action)	(donne de la force à la manière d'une action)

da'ga	25	as, like	comme
dahir	20	sure, certain	sur
dala	23	dala, a five franc coin (indef.)	dala, cinq francs
dama	26	well-being (def./indef. sg.)	bien-être
damsi	16	peanut (indef. sg.)	arachide
dan	14	to forge	forger
de	30	if	si
dey	23	to buy	acheter
di	4	to see	voir
dibi	21	to mix	mélanger
do	1	to, to the place of	à, chez
dona	22	to be in the habit of	s'accoutumer à
doṅo	21	doṅo (a drink made of millet) (def. sg.)	doṅo (un boisson de mil)
domu	21	domu (a drink made of millet) (indef. sg.)	doṅu (un boisson de mil)
dori	26	sickness (indef. sg.)	maladie
du	19	to have, possess	posséder
duma	16	to sow	semmer
dyat'e	9	sick (indef. sg.)	malade
dyew	18	the cold part of the dry season (indef.)	partie froide de la saison sèche
dyewa'di	26	to make thirsty	donner de la soif
dyewo	18	the cold part of the dry season (def.)	partie froide de la saison sèche
dyineyey	23	things (def.)	choses
dyirba'di	26	to make sleepy	donner du sommeil
dyiri	14	year (indef.)	an
ey	4	them	eux/les (pron.)
fakarey	22	to chat	bavarder
far	14	to farm	cultiver
fara'si	28	French (def./indef. sg.)	français
farey	11	fields (def.)	champs

fari	3	field (indef.)	champ
faro	1	field (def.)	champ
fedyi	19	sheep (indef. sg.)	mouton
fo	14	a/an, one	un
fo	11	which, what	quel/lequel
fo	30	greeting (def./indef.)	salut
fo'da	13	road, path (def.)	chemin
fo'do	13	road, path (indef.)	chemin
fofo	1	hello	bonjour
foy	1	to spend the day	passer la journée
fu	10	house (indef.)	maison
fu	30	home (indef.)	maison
fulo	23	fulo (a hat) (def.)	fulo (un bonnet)
furo	23	to enter	entrer
fuwey	11	houses (def.)	maisons
fuwo	1	house (def.)	maison
ga	14	to help	aider
ga	7	is/are/was/were/will be	être
ga	22	(signals a compound predicate)	(signale un attribut complexe)
ga	5	(signals the Future)	(signale le futur)
gako	14	helper (indef.)	assistant
gana	13	to follow	suivre
gasey	22	calabashes (def.)	calabasses
ga ti	11	(signals equivalence between expressions)	(signale équivalence entre deux expressions)
go	1	to be (Present)	être (présent)
go'da	10	to have	avoir
go ga	14	(signals action in progress)	(signale une action en train de se faire)
go no	23	there is/there are	il y a
gorn'o	19	chicken (indef.)	poulet

goro 19  
 goro 22  
 goy 14  
 goy 22  
 gu 14  
 gu'guri 23  
 gumo 9  
 gumo 30  
 ha' 21  
 ha'a 2  
 habey 11  
 habo 1  
 habo 27  
 habo ka' bisa 27  
 habu 3  
 habu 27  
 habu bene 27  
 habu wone ra 27  
 ha'do 16  
 ha'du 18  
 hala 30  
 hala kayna 30  
 ham 21  
 hambara 20  
 hamo 21  
 hanan 9  
 hanberi 20  
 hara'di 26  
 hare 13  
 hare 13  
 hari 20  
 haw 19

to remain, dwell  
 to sit  
 work (indef. sg.)  
 to work  
 five  
 egg (indef.)  
 very  
 a lot, much  
 to drink  
 no  
 markets (def.)  
 market (def.)  
 week (def.)  
 last week  
 market (indef.)  
 week (indef.)  
 next week  
 this week  
 month (def.)  
 month (indef.)  
 up to, until  
 until later, tonight  
 meat (indef. sg.)  
 perhaps, probably  
 meat (def. sg.)  
 clean (def./indef. sg.)  
 Friday (indef.)  
 to make hungry  
 direction (def./indef.)  
 toward  
 rain, water (indef. sg.)  
 cow (indef.)

rester, habiter  
 s'asseoir  
 travail  
 travailler  
 cinq  
 oeuf  
 très  
 beaucoup  
 boire  
 non  
 marchés  
 marché  
 semaine  
 semaine dernière  
 marché  
 semaine  
 semaine prochaine  
 cette semaine  
 mois  
 mois  
 jusqu'à  
 à plus tard, à ce  
 soir  
 viande  
 peut-être, probable-  
 ment  
 viande  
 propre  
 vendredi  
 flouer de la faim  
 direction  
 vers  
 pluie, eau  
 vache

hawro	21	porridge, food (def. sg.)	bouillie.
hawru	21	porridge, food (indef. sg.)	bouillie
hawsa	28	Hausa (language) (def./ indef. sg.)	haoussa (langue)
hawsa'tye	28	Hausa (person) (indef. sg.)	haoussa (race)
hay	29	thing (indef.)	chose
hay fo	29	something	quelque chose
hay kulu	29	anything, everything	n'importe quoi/tout
hayni	18	the hot part of the dry season (indef.)	partie chaude de la saison sèche
hayni	16	millet (indef. sg.)	mil
hayne	18	the hot part of the dry season (def.)	partie chaude de la saison sèche
hi	29	to borrow	emprunter
hin	29	can/may	pouvoir
hi'ka	14	two	deux
hi'ka'ta	13	second	deuxième
hima	22	to have to, must	devoir
hina	21	to cook	cuire
hinne	28	alone	seul
hirri	20	to be cloudy	être nuageux
hi'tyin	19	goat (indef.)	chèvre
hi'za	14	three	trois
hi'za'ta	13	third	troisième
hu'kuna	6	today	aujourd'hui
i	13	(replaces the noun when an adjective stands alone)	(remplace le nom lorsqu'un adjectif se trouve seul)
i	6	their	leur/leurs
i	23	them	eux/les (prôn.)
i	1	they	ils/elles
iddú	19	six	six
i fo	16	what	qu'est-ce que/quoi
i fo se	22	why	pourquoi

i'ga	7	he/she (intensive form)	il/elle (forme intensive)
i'gey	7	they (intensive form)	ils/elles (forme intensive)
i'gilisi	28	English (indef. sg.)	anglais
iri	6	our	notre/nos
iri	4	us	nous
iri	1	we	nous
iye	19	seven	sept
ka	2	to come	venir
ka'	14	that (relative)	qui/que
ka'be	13	hand (indef.)	main
ka'be n'wari	13	right hand (indef.)	main droite
ka'buwo	13	left hand (def./indef.)	main gauche
ka'de	27	to bring	apporter
ka'kan	26	to oppress	serrer
kala	2	until	jusqu'à
kari	1	to lie down	se coucher
kay	22	to stand	se tenir debout
kay	13	to stop	s'arrêter
kaydiya	18	rainy season (def./indef.)	saison des pluies
kayna	16	a little, a few	un peu
kayna	3	small (def./indef. sg.)	petit
kayno	25	younger brother/sister (def.)	jeune frère/jeune soeur
ko'da	27	to take, escort	emmener
kolkoti	16	maize (indef. sg.)	maïs
korni	20	heat (indef. sg.)	chaleur
korno	26	fever (def.)	fièvre
koro'	27	to have fever	avoir de la fièvre
koto	27	to cough	tousser
kotwa	26	coughing (def.)	toux
koy	1	to go	aller
koy	23	owner (indef.)	propriétaire
koyo	23	owner (def.)	propriétaire

kubi	13	to turn	tourner
kudaku	16	sweet potato (indef. sg.)	patate
kulu	21	every, each, all	chaque/tout
kurko	14	herdsman (indef.)	berger
kuru	14	to herd	garder (bétail)
kusey	22	pots (def.)	marmites
kwara	1	village (def./indef.)	village
kwarey	11	villages (def.)	villages
kwayi	22	kwayi (a garment) (indef.)	kwayi (un boubou)
labari	29	news (indef. sg.)	nouvelles
labari tira	29	newspaper (def./indef. sg.)	journal
lamba	30	number (def./indef.)	numéro
lokotoro	27	doctor (indef.)	médecin
lokotoro			
kwara	27	dispensary (indef.)	dispensaire
ma	7	to call, name	s'appeler
ma	26	to feel	sentir
ma	30	(signals a dependent clause following a verb of feeling)	(signale une phrase subordonnée qui suit un verbe d'émotion)
ma	27	(signals a polite Imperative sg.)	(signale une forme polie de l'impératif)
man	13	near	près de
man	1	where	où
mana	2	(signals the negative in the Past)	(signale le négatif au passé)
mannan	19	last year	année dernière
mantî	8	(signals the negative in the Present)	(signale le négatif au présent)
mardye	14	how much, how many	combien
marga	29	meeting (def./indef.)	réunion
mate	1	how, what	comment

may	7	was	qui
may	8	whose	de qui
mima'da	22	to gossip	potiner
mo	21	rice (indef. sg.)	riz
mo	4	too, also	aussi
moru	13	far	loin
motey	13	buses, trucks, cars (def.)	voitures
mudun	22	trousers (indef. sg.)	pantalons
mwa	21	rice (def. sg.)	riz
na	16	(signals the Past when the object precedes the verb)	(signale le passé lorsque le régime précède le verbe)
nda	1	and	et
nda	25	than	que
nda	2	/with	avec
ne	11	it is/here is/there is/they are/here are/there are	c'est/ce sont/ voici/voilà
newo	11	right here	ici même
ngwoya	1	hello	bonjour
ni	4	you (sg. object)	te
ni	1	you (sg. subject)	tu
ni	6	your (sg.)	ton/ta/tes
no	26	to give	donner
no	2	it is/it was/it will be/they are/they were/ they will be	être
no'gu	29	place (indef.)	lieu
no'gu fo	29	somewhere	quelque part
no'gu kulu	29	anywhere, everywhere	n'importe où/partout
noro	23	money (def. sg.)	argent
n'wari	13	item of food (indef.)	nourriture
nya	6	mother (indef.)	mère
nyan'o	6	mother (def.)	mère
nyun	22	to wash	laver
ohe	2	yes	oui

po'piter 16

ra 4

rogo 16

safaro 26

samey 1

se 28

se 19

si 5

si 23

si'da 10

si'dyi 16

si'tin 18

si'tina 13

son'lo 18

soro 26

soro 21

soru 27

suba 5

suba si 27

susubay 20

ta 22

tafe 22

tamma 20

tasey 22

tatyi 14

te 14

tira 29

to 20

to 23

to'ton 2

tyada 23

potato (def./indef. sg.)

in

cassava (indef. sg.)

medicine (def.)

good

for

with

(signals the negative in the Present and Future)

without

to not have

to plant

to begin

first, next

now

diarrhea (def.)

time (indef. sg.)

to have diarrhea

tomorrow

day after tomorrow

early morning (indef.)

to sew

tafe (a loose garment)

(indef.)

to believe

pans (def.)

four

to do, make

book (def./indef.)

to arrive

O. K., agreed

to increase

expensive (def./indef. sg.)

pomme de terre

dans

manioc

médicament

bon

pour

avec

(signale le négatif au présent et au futur)

sans

ne pas avoir

planter

commencer

premier, prochain

maintenant

diarrhée

fois

avoir la diarrhée

demain

lendemain

matin (tôt)

coudre

tafe (un pagne)

croire

plats

quatre

faire

livre

arriver

d'accord

augmenter

cher

tye	29	time, occasion (indef.)	fois
tyere	22	each other	l'un l'autre
tyew	28	to study, read	étudier, lire
tyewa'di	28	to teach	enseigner
tyewa'diko	28	teacher (indef.)	maître
tyi'di	23	plus	plus
tyin	20	night (indef.)	nuit
tyine	28	language (indef.)	langue
wa'de	10	wife (indef.)	femme
wala	18	or	ou
wala	2	(signals a question)	(signale une question)
ward	29	to know, speak	connaître, parler
wasa	30	to be enough	suffire
wati	21	time (indef. sg.)	temps
wati fo	2	when	quand
wati ka'	30	when	quand
wati kulu	29	always, any time	toujours
wō	14	(signals the subject in some structures)	(signale le sujet dans certaines structures)
wodin	12	that one (near by)	celui-là (tout près)
wodin banda	27	and then, after that	après cela
wodin se	30	so, therefore	c'est pourquoi
wōfo	12	which one, what one	lequel
wōhakm	23	eighty	quatre-vingts
wōhe'di	12	that one (middle distance)	celui-là (moyenne distance)
wone	8	(signals possession in the singular)	(signale la possession au singulier)
wone	27	this	ce/cette
wone	11	this one here/that one there	celui-ci/celui-là
woney	11	(signals possession in the plural)	(signale la possession au pluriel)

woney	11	these/those ones	ceux-ci/ceux-là
wono	11	this/that one	celui-ci/celui-là
woro'ka	23	twenty.	vingt
woro'za	23	thirty	trente
woy	19	ten	dix
woyborey	22	women (def.)	femmes
woydu	23	sixty	soixante
woygu	23	fifty	cinquante
woyme	6	sister of a male (def./ indef.)	soeur d'un mâle
woyno	20	sun (indef.)	soleil
woyqngo	12	that one (far away)	celui-là (là-bas)
woytaty	23	forty	quarante
woyye	23	seventy	soixante-dix
ya	28	am/is/are	être (présent)
ya	4	him/her	le/la (pron.)
ya	13	there	là
ya'	11	(signals the indefinite pkural)	(signale le pluriel indéfini)
ye	27	to return	revenir
yegga	19	nine	neuf
yeni	20	coolness (indef. sg.)	fraîcheur
yeri	27	to vomit	vomir
yero	26	vomiting (def.)	vomissement
yési	19	next year	année prochaine
yey	4	them	eux/les (pron.)
yo	19	camel (indef.)	château
yo'go	11	right over there, wonder	là-bas
za	14	since	depuis
za'bar	23	thousand	mille
zam	14	blacksmith' (indef.)	forgeron
zama	30	because	parce que
zangu	23	hundred	cent
zanka	9	child (def./indef.)	enfant

zanka	25	young (def./indef.)	jeune
zankey	11	children (def.)	enfants
zari	20	early afternoon (indef.)	après-midi (tôt)
zarma	28	Djerma (def./indef.)	djerma
zaro	21	day (def.)	jour
za son'lo	30	already	déjà
zen	25	to'age	vieillir
zibi	9	dirty (def./indef. sg.)	sale

ENGLISH-DJERMA-FRENCH GLOSSARY

a	fo 14)	un
above	bene 27	au-déssus
after that	wodin banda 27	après cela
to age	zen 25	vieillir
agreed	to 23	d'accord
all	kulu 21	tout
alone	hinne 28	seul
already	za son'o 30	déjà
also	me 4	aussi
always	wati kulu 29	toujours
am	ya 28	suis
American (indef. sg.)	amerike 28	américain
an	fo 14	un
and	nda 1	et
and then	wodin banda 27	après cela
anyone	boró kulu 29	n'importe qui
anything	hay kulu 29	n'importe quoi
any time	wati kulu 29	toujours
anywhere	no'gu kulu 29	n'importe où
are	ga 7	être (présent)
are	ya 28	être (présent)
to arrive	to 20	arriver
as	da'ga 25	comme
because	zama 30	parce que
to be cloudy	hirri 20	être nuageux
to be enough	wasa 30	suffire
to begin	si'tin 18	commencer
to believe	tamma 20	croire
to be past	bisa 20	passer
to be (Present)	go I	être (présent)
to be in the habit of	dona 22	s'accoutumer à
big (def. sg.)	bero 3	grand

big (indef. sg.)	beri . 7	grand
blacksmith (indef.)	zam . 14	forgeron
book (def./indef.)	tira . 29	livre
to borrow	hi . 29	emprunter
bread (indef. sg.)	buru . 23	pain
to bring	ka'de . 27	apporter
brother of a female (def./indef.)	arme . 6	frère d'une femme
buses (def.)	motey . 13	voitures
but	anna . 19	mais
to buy	dey . 23	acheter
calabashes (def.)	gasey . 22	calabasses
to call	na . 7	s'appeler
camel (indef.)	yo . 19	chameau
can	hin . 29	pouvoir
cars (def.)	motey . 13	voitures
cassava (indef. sg.)	roge . 16	manioc
certain	dahir . 20	sur
to chat	fakarey . 22	bavarder
chicken (indef.)	gorn'o . 19	poulet
child (def./indef.)	zanka . 9	enfant
children (def.)	zankey . 11	enfants
clean (def./indef. sg.)	hanan . 9	propre
cloud (indef.)	buru . 20	nuage
the cold part of the dry season (def.)	dyewo . 18	partie froide de la saison sèche
the cold part of the dry season (indef.)	dyew . 18	partie froide de la saison sèche
to come	ka . 2	venir
to cook	hina . 21	cuire
coolness (indef. sg.)	yeni . 20	fraicheur
to cough	koto . 27	tousser
coughing (def.)	kotwa . 26	toux
cow (indef.)	haw . 19	vache

day (def.)	zaro 21	jour
day after tomorrow	suba si 27	lendemain
day before yesterday	bifo 27	avant-hier
diarrhea (def.)	soro 26	diarrhée
to die	bu 16	mourir
direction (def./indef.)	hare 13	direction
dirty (def./indef. sg.)	zibi 9	sale
dispensary (indef.)	lokotoro kwara 27	dispensaire
Djerma (def./indef. sg.)	zarma 28	djerma
to do	te 14	faire
doctor (indef.)	lokotoro 27	médecin
a drink made of millet (def. sg.)	dono 21	boisson de mil
a drink made of millet (indef. sg.)	donu 21	boisson de mil
to drink	ha' 21	boire
to dwell	goro 19	habiter
each	kulu 21	chaque
each other	tyere 22	l'un l'autre
early afternoon (indef.)	zari 20	après-midi (tôt)
early evening (indef.)	alasar 20	soir (première partie)
early morning (indef.)	susubay 20	matin (tôt)
egg (indef.)	gu'guri 23	oeuf
eight	ahakku 19	huit
eighty	wohakku 23	quatre-vingts
to end	ban 18	finir
English (indef. sg.)	i'gilisi 28	anglais
to enter	furo 23	entrer
to escort	ko'da 27	emmener
even	ba 29	même
every	kulu 21	chaque
everyone	borey kulu 29	tout le monde
everything	hay kultu 29	tout
everywhere	no'gu kulu 29	partout

expensive (def./indef. sg)	tyada 23	cher
far	moru 13	loin
to farm	far 14	cultiver
farmer (indef.)	alfari 14	cultivateur
father (def.)	babo 6	père
father (indef.)	baba 6	père
to feel	na 26	sentir
fever (def.)	korno 26	fièvre
a few	kayna 16	un peu
field (def.)	faro 1	champ
field (indef.)	fari 3	champ
fields (def.)	farey 11	champs
fifty	woygu 23	cinquante
first	si'tina 13	premier
five	gu 14	cinq
a five franc coin (indef.)	dala 23	monnaie de cinq francs
to follow	gana 13	suivre
food (def. sg.)	hawro 21	porridge
food (indef. sg.)	hawru 21	porridge
for	se 28	pour
to forge	dan 14	forger
forty	woytaty 23	quarante
four	taty 14	quatre
French (def./indef. sg.)	farasi 28	français
Friday (indef.)	hanberi 20	vendredi
a garment (indef.)	kwayi 22	boubou
to give	no 26	donner
to go	koy 1	aller
goat (indef.)	hi'tyin 19	chèvre
good	samey 1	bon
good (indef. sg.)	bori 10	bon
to gossip	mima'da 22	potiner
greeting (def./indef.)	fo 30	salut

hand (indef.)	ka'be	13	main
a hat (def.)	fulo	23	bonnet
Hausa (language) (def./ indef. sg.)	hawsa	28	haoussa (langue)
Hausa (person) (indef. sg.)	hawsa'tye	28	haoussa (race)
to have	du	19	avoir
to have	go'da	10	avoir
to have diarrhea	scoru	27	avoir la diarrhée
to have fever	koro'	27	avoir de la fièvre
to have to	hima	22	devoir
he	a	1	il
he (intensive form)	i'ga	7	il (forme intensive)
health (indef.)	bani	1	santé
heat (indef. sg.)	korni	20	chaleur
hello	fofo	1	bonjour
hello	ngwoya	1	bonjour
to help	ga	14	aider
helper (indef.)	gako	14	assistant
her	ya	4	la (pron.)
her	a	4	la (pron.)
her	a	6	son/sa/ses
to herd	kurú	14	garder (bétail)
herdsman (indef.)	kurko	14	berger
here are	ne	11	voici
here is	ne	11	voici
him	a	4	le (pron.)
him	ya	4	le (pron.)
his	a	6	son/sa/ses
home	fu	30	maison
horse (indef.)	bari	19	cheval
the hot part of the dry season (def.)	hayno	18	partie chaude de la saison sèche
the hot part of the dry season (indef.)	hayni	18	partie chaude de la saison sèche

house (def.)	fuwo	1	maison
house (indéf.)	fu	10	maison
houses (def.)	fuwey	11	maisons
how	mate	1	comment
how many	mardye	14	combien
how much	mardye	14	combien
hundred	zangu	23	cent
I	ay	1	je
if	de	30	si
in	ra	4	dans
to increase	to <sup>o</sup> ton	2	augmenter
is	ga	7	être (présent)
is	ya	28	être (présent)
it	a	1	il/elle
item of food (indef.)	n <sup>o</sup> wari	13	nourriture
it is	ne	11	c'est
it is	no	2	c'est
it was	no	2	c'était
it will be	no	2	ce sera
to know	wari	29	connaître
language (indef.)	tyine	28	langue
last week	habo ka <sup>o</sup> bisa	27	semaine dernière
last year	mannan	19	année dernière
late afternoon (indef.)	alula	20	après-midi (tard)
late evening (indef.)	alwari	20	soir (dernière partie)
late morning (indef.)	aduha	20	matin (tard)
left hand (def./indef.)	ka <sup>o</sup> buwo	13	main gauche
to lie down	kani	1	se coucher
like	da <sup>o</sup> ga	25	comme
a little	kayna	16	un peu
a loose garment (indef.)	tafe	22	pagne
a lot	bobo	16	beaucoup
a lot	gumo	30	beaucoup

porridge (def. sg.)	hawro 21	bouillie
porridge (indef. sg.)	hawru 21	bouillie
to possess	du 19	posséder
potato (def./indef. sg.)	po'piter 16	potage de terre
pots (def.)	kusey 22	marmites
pretty (indef. sg.)	bori 10	joli
probably	hambara 20	probablement
rain (indef. sg.)	hari 20	pluie
rainy season (def./indef.)	kaydiya 18	saison des pluies
to read	tyew 28	lire
to remain	goro 19	rester
to return	ye 27	revenir
rice (def. sg.)	nwa 21	riz
rice (indef. sg.)	me 21	riz
right hand (indef.)	ka'be n'wari 13	main droite
right here	newo 11	ici même
right over there	yo'go 11	là-bas
road (def.)	fo'da 13	chemin
road (indef.)	fo'do 13	chemin
Saturday (indef.)	asipti 20	samedi
second	hi'ka'ta 13	deuxième
to see	di 4	voir
seven	iye 19	sept
seventy	woyye 23	soixante-dix
to sew	ta 22	coudre
she	a 1	elle
she (intensive form)	i'ga 7	e'Ne (forme intensive)
sheep (indef. sg.)	fedyi 19	mouton
sick (indef. sg.)	dya'te 9	malade
sickness (indef. sg.)	dori 26	maladie
since	za 14	depuis
sister of a male (def./indef.)	woyme 6	soeur d'un mâle



to sit	goro	22	s'asseoir
six	iddu	19	six
sixty	woydu	23	soixante
sky (def.)	bona	20	ciel
small (def./indef. sg.)	kayna	3	petit
so	wodin se	30	c'est pourquoi
someone	boro fo	29	quelqu'un
something	hay fo	29	quelque chose
somewhere	no'gu fo	29	quelque part
to sow	duma	16	semmer
to speak	wani	29	parler
to spend the day	foy	1	passer la journée
to stand	kay	22	se tenir debout
to stop	kay	13	s'arrêter
to study	tyew	28	étudier
sun (indef.)	woyno	20	soleil
Sunday (indef.)	alhadī	20	dimanche
sure	dahir	20	sûr
sweet potato (indef. sg.)	kudaku	16	patate
to take	ko'da	27	emmener
to teach	tyewa'di	28	enseigner
teacher (indef.)	tyewa'diko	28	maître
ten	woy	19	dix
than	nda	25	que
that (relative)	ka	14	que
that one	wono	11	celui-là
that one (far away)	woyongo	12	celui-là (là-bas)
that one (middle distance)	wohe'di	12	celui-là (moyenne distance)
that one (near by)	wodin	12	celui-là (tout près)
that one there	wone	11	celui-là
their	i	6	leur/leurs
them	ey	4	eux/les (pron.)
them	i	23	eux/les (pron.)

them	yey 4	eux/les (pron.)
there	ya 13	là
there are	go no 23	il y a
there are	ne 11	voilà
therefore	wodin se 30	c'est pourquci
there is	go no 23	il y a
there is	ne 11	voilà
these ones	woney 11	ceux-ci
they	i i	ils/elles
they (intensive form)	i'gey 7	ils/elles (form inten- sive)
they are	ne 11	ce sont
they are	no 2	ils/elles sont
they were	no 2	ils/elles étaient
they will be	no 2	ils/elles seront
time (indef.)	tye 29	fois
things (def.)	dyineyey 23	choses
third	hi'za'ta 13	troisième
thirty	woro'za 23	trente
this	wone 27	ce/cette
this one	wono 11	celui-ci
this one here	wone 11	celui-ci
this week	habu wone ra 27	cette semaine
those ones	woney 11	ceux-là
thousand	za'bar 28	mille
three	hi'za 11	trois
Thursday (indef.)	alamisi 20	jeudi
time (indef. sg.)	alwati 20	temps
time (indef. sg.)	soro 21	fois
time (indef.)	tye 29	fois
time (indef. sg.)	wati 21	temps
to	do 1	chez, à
today	hu'kuna 6	aujourd'hui
tonight	hala kayna 30	ce soir
tomorrow	suba 5	demain



too	mo	4	aussi
to the place of	do	1	chez, à
toward	hare	13	vers
trousers (indef. sg.)	mudun	22	pantalons
trucks (def.)	motey	13	voitures
Tuesday (indef.)	atalata	20	mardi
to turn	kubi	13	tourner
twenty	woro'ka	23	vingt
two	hi'ka	14	deux
until	hala	30	jusqu'à
until	kala	2	jusqu'à
until later	hala kayna	30	à plus tard
up to	hala	30	jusqu'à
us	iri	4	nous
very	gumo	9	très
very early morning (indef.)	alfazar	20	matin (très tôt)
village (def./indef.)	kwara	1	village
villages (def.)	kwarey	11	villages
to vomit	veri	27	vomir
vomiting (def.)	yero	26	vomissement
to want	ba	23	vouloir
was	ga	7	être
to wash	nyun	22	laver
water (indef. sg.)	hari	20	eau
we	iri	1	nous
Wednesday (indef.)	alarba	20	mercredi
week (def.)	habo	27	semaine
week (indef.)	habu	27	semaine
well-being (def./indef.)	dama	26	bien-être
were	ga	7	être
what	fo	11	lequel
what	i fo	16	qu'est-ce que
what	mate	1	comment
what one	wofa	12	lequel

when	wati fo	2	quand
when	wati ka'	30	quand
where	man	1	ou
which	fo	11	quel
which one	wofo	12	lequel
who	may	7	qui
whose	may	8	de qui
why	i fo se	22	pourquoi
wife (indef.)	wa'de	10	femme
will be	ga	7	être
with	banda	22	avec
with	nda	2	avec
with	se	19	avec
without	si	23	sans
women (def.)	woyborey	22	femmes
work (indef. sg.)	goy	14	travail
to work	goy	22	travailler
year (indef.)	dyiri	14	an
yes	qho	2	oui
yesterday	bi	2	hier
yonder	yo'go	11	là-bas
you (sg. object)	ni	4	te
you (sg. subject)	ni	1	tu
young (def./indef.)	zanka	25	jeune
younger brother/sister (def.)	kayno	25	jeune frère/jeune sœur
you (pl. object)	aran	4	vous
you (pl. subject)	aran	1	vous
your (pl.)	aran	6	votre/vos
your (sg.)	ni	6	ton/ta/tes

FRENCH-DJERMA-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

à	dò 1	to
à ce soir	hala kayna 30	until tonight
acheter	dey 23	to buy
aider	ga 14	to help
ainé	bero 25	elder brother (def.)
ainée	bero 25	elder sister (def.)
aller	koy 1	to go
américain	amerike 28	American (indef. sg.)
an	dyiri 14	year (indef.)
anglais	i'gilisi 28	English (indef. sg.)
année dernière	maman 19	last year
année prochaine	yesi 19	next year
à plus tard	hala kayna 30	until later
apporter	ka'de 27	to bring
après-midi (tard)	alula 20	late afternoon (indef.)
après-midi (tôt)	zari 20	early afternoon (indef.)
après cela	wodin banda 27	and then, after that
arachide	damsi 16	peanut (indef. sg.)
argent	noro 23	money (def. sg.)
arriver	to 20	to arrive
assistant	gako 14	helper (indef.)
au-dessus	bene 27	above
augmenter	to'ton 2	to increase
aujourd'hui	hu'kuna 6	today
aussi	mo 4	too, also
avant-hier	bifo 27	day before yesterday
avec	banda 22	with
avec	nda 2	with
avec	se 19	with
avoir	go'da 10	to have
avoir besoin de	ba 23	to want, need
avoir de la fièvre	koro' 27	to have fever

avoir la diarrhée	soru	27	to have diarrhea
bavarder	fakarey	22	to chat
beaucoup	bobo	16	a lot, much, many
beaucoup	gumɔ	30	a lot, much
berger	kurko	14	herdsman (indef.)
bien-être	dama	26	well-being (def./indef. sg.)
boire	haʔ	21	to drink
boisson de mil	dono	21	a drink made of millet (def. sg.)
boisson de mil	domu	21	a drink made of millet (indef. sg.)
bon	bori	10	good (indef. sg.)
bon	samey	1	good
bonjour	fofo	1	hello
bonjour	ngwoya	1	hello
bonnet	fulo	23	a hat (def.)
boubou	kwayi	22	a garment (indef.)
bouillie	hawro	21	porridge, food
bouillie	hawru	21	porridge, food (indef. sg.)
calabasses	gasey	22	calabashes (def.)
ce	wone	27	this
celui-ci	wone	11	this one here
celui-ci	wono	11	this one
celui-là	whe'di	12	that one (middle distance)
celui-là	wone	11	that one there
celui-là	wono	11	that one
celui-là (là-bas)	woyongo	12	that one (far away)
celui-là (tout près)	wodin	12	that one (near by)
cent	zangu	23	hundred
ce sont	ne	11	they are
c'est	ne	11	it is
c'est pourquoi	wodin se	30	so, therefore
cette	wone	27	this
cette semaine	habu wone ra	27	this week
ceux-ci	woney	11	these ones

ceux-là	woney	11	those ones
chaleur	korni	20	heat (indef. sg.)
chameau	yo	19	camel (indef.)
champ	fari	3	field (indef.)
champ	faro	1	field (def.)
champs	farey	11	fields (def.)
chaque	kulu	21	every, each
chemin	fo'da	13	road, path (def.)
chemin	fo'do	13	road, path (indef.)
cher	tyada	23	expensive (def./indef. sg.)
cheval	bari	19	horse (indef.)
chèvre	hi'tyin	19	goat (indef.)
chez	do	1	to the place of
chose	hay	29	thing (indef.)
choses	dyineyey	23	things (def.)
ciel	bens	20	sky (def.)
cinq	gu	14	five
cinquante	woygu	23	fifty
combien	wardye	14	how much, how many
comme	da'ga	25	as, like
commencer	si'tin	18	to begin
comment	mate	1	how, what
connaître	wani	29	to know
coudre	ta	22	to sew
croire	tanna	20	to believe
cuire	hina	21	to cook
cultiver	far	14	to farm
cultivateur	alfari	14	farmer (indef.)
d'accord	to	23	O. K., agreed
dans	ra	4	in
déjà	za son'o	30	already
demain	suba	5	tomorrow
depuis	za	14	since

de qui	may 8	whose
deux	hi'ka 14	two
deuxième	hi'ka'ta 13	second
devoir	hima 22	to have to, must
diarrhée	soro 26	diarrhea (def.)
dimanche	alhadì 20	Sunday (indef.)
direction	hare 13	direction (def./indef.)
dispensaire	lokotoro kwara 27	dispensary (indef.)
dix	woy 19	ten
djerma	zarma 28	Djerma (def./indef. sg.)
donner	no 26	to give
donner de la faim	hara'di 26	to make hungry
donner de la soif	dyewa'di 26	to make thirsty
donner du sommeil	dyirba'di 26	to make sleepy
eau	hari 20	water
elle	a 1	she
elle (form intensive)	i'ga 7	she (intensive form)
elles	i 1	they
elles (form intensive)	i'gey 7	they (intensive form)
emmener	ko'da 27	to take, escort
emprunter	hi 29	to borrow
enfant	zanka 9	child (def./indef.)
enfants	zankey 11	children (def.)
enseigner	tyewa'di 28	to teach
entrer	furo 23	to enter
et	nda 1	and
être	ga 7	is/are/was/were/will be
être	no 2	it is/it was/it will be/ they are/they were/ they will be
être nuageux	hirri 20	to be cloudy
être (présent)	go 1	to be (Present)
être (présent)	ya 28	am/is/are



étudier	tyew	28	to study
eux	ey	4	them
eux	i	23	them
eux	yey	4	them
faire	te	14	to do, make
femme	wa'de	10	wife (indef.)
femmes	woyborey	22	women (def.)
fièvre	korno	26	fever (def.)
finir	ban	18	to end
fois	soro	21	time (indef. sg.)
fois	tye	29	time, occasion (indef.)
forger	dan	14	to forge
forgeron	zam	14	blacksmith
fraîcheur	yeni	20	coolness (indef. sg.)
français	fara'si	28	French (def./indef. sg.)
frère d'une femelle	arne	6	brother of a female (def./indef.)
garder (bétail)	kuru	14	to herd
gens	borey	29	people (def.)
grand	beri	7	big (indef. sg.)
grand	bero	3	big (def. sg.)
habiter	goro	19	to dwell
haoussa (langue)	hawsa	28	Hausa (language) (def./indef. sg.)
haoussa (race)	hawsa'tye	28	Hausa (person) (indef. sg.)
hier	bi	2	yesterday
hommes	alborey	22	men (def.)
huit	ahakku	19	eight
ici même	newo	11	right here
il	a	1	he/it
il (forme intensive)	i'ga	7	he/it (intensive form)
ils	i	1	they
ils (forme intensive)	i'gey	7	they (intensive form)
il y a	go no	23	there is/there are
je	ay	1	I

jeudi	alamisi	20	Thursday (indef.)
jeune	zanka	25	young (def./indef.)
jeune frère	kayno	25	younger brother (def.)
jeune soeur	kayno	25	younger sister (def.)
joli	bori	10	pretty (indef. sg.)
jour	zaro	21	day (def.)
journal	labari tira	29	newspaper (def./indef. sg.)
jusqu'à	hala	30	up to, until
jusqu'à	kala	2	until
la (pron.)	a	4	him/her
là (pron.)	ya	4	her
là	ya	13	there
là-bas	yo'go	11	right over there, yonder
langue	tyine	28	language (indef.)
laver	nyun	22	to wash
le (pron.)	a	4	him/her
le (pron.)	ya	4	him
lendemain	suba si	27	day after tomorrow
lequel	fo	11	which, what
lequel	wofo	12	which one, what one
les (pron.)	ey	4	them
les (pron.)	i	23	them
les (pron.)	yey	4	them
leur	i	6	their
leurs	i	6	their
lieu	no'gu	29	place (indef.)
lire	tyew	28	to read
livre	tira	29	book (def./indef.)
loin	moru	13	far
lui	a	4	him/her
lundi	atinni	20	Monday (indef.)
l'un l'autre	tyere	22	each other
ma	ay	6	my
main	ka'be	13	hand (indef.)
main droite	ka'be n'wari	13	right hand (indef.)

main gauche	ka'buwo	13	left hand (def./indef.)
maintenant	son'o	18	now
mais	anna	19	but
mais	kolkoti	16	maize (indef. sg.)
maison	fu	30	home (indef.)
maison	fu	10	house (indef.)
maison	fuwo	1	house (def.)
maisons	fuwey	11	houses (def.)
maître	tyewa'diko	28	teacher (indef.)
malade	dya'te	9	sick (indef. sg.)
maladie	dori	26	sickness (indef. sg.)
manioc	rogo	16	cassava (indef. sg.)
marché	habo	1	market (def.)
marché	habu	3	market (indef.)
marchés	habey	11	markets (def.)
marti	atalata	20	Tuesday (indef.)
marmites	kusey	22	pots (def.)
matin (tard)	aduha	20	late morning (indef.)
matin (tôt)	susubay	20	early morning (indef.)
matin (très tôt)	alfazar	20	very early morning (indef.)
me	ay	4	me
médecin	lokotoro	27	doctor (indef.)
médicament	safaro	26	medicine (def.)
mélanger	dibi	21	to mix
même	ba	29	even
mercredi	al'arba	20	Wednesday (indef.)
mère	nya	6	mother (indef.)
mère	nyan'o	6	mother (def.)
mes	ay	6	my
millet	hayni	16	millet (indef. sg.)
mille	za'har	23	thousand
moi	ay	4	me
monnaie de cinq francs	dala	23	a five franc coin (indef.)

mois	ha'do	16
mois	ha'du	18
mon	ay	6
nourrir	bu	16
mouton	fedyi	19
ne pas avoir	si'da	10
neuf	yegga	19
n'importe où	no'gu kulu	29
n'importe qui	boro-kulu	29
n'importe quoi	hay kulu	29
non	ha'a	2
nos	iri	6
notre	iri	6
nourriture	n'wari	13
nous	iri	4
nous	iri	1
nouvelles	labari	29
nuage	buru	20
nuit	tyin	20
numéro	lamba	30
œuf	gu'guri	23
on	boro	13
ou	wala	18
où	man	1
oui	oho	2
pagne	tafe	22
pain	buru.	23
pantalons	mudun	22
parce que	zama	30
parler	wari	29
partie chaude de la saison sèche	hayni	18
partie chaude de la saison sèche	hayno	18

month (def.)
month (indef.)
to die
sheep (indef. sg.)
to not have
nine
anywhere
anyone
anything
no
our
our
item of food (indef.)
us
we
news (indef. sg.)
cloud (indef.)
night (indef.)
number (def./indef.)
egg (indef.)
one (indef.)
or
where
yes
a loose garment (indef.)
bread (indef. sg.)
trousers (indef. sg.)
because
to speak
the hot part of the dry sea- son (indef.)
the hot part of the dry sea- son (def.)

partie froide de la saison sèche	dyew 18	the cold part of the dry season (indef.)
partie froide de la saison sèche	dyewo 18	the cold part of the dry season (def.)
partout	no'ga kulu 29	everywhere
passer	bisa 20	to pass
passer la journée	foy 1	to spend the day
patate	kudaku 16	sweet potato (indef. sg.)
payer	bana 23	to pay
père	baba 6	father (indef.)
père	baboo 6	father (def.)
(une) personne	boro 13	person (indef.)
petit	kayna 3	small (def./indef.)
peut-être	hambara 20	perhaps
planter	si'dyl 16	to plant
plats	tasey 22	pans (def.)
pluie	hari 20	rain
plus	tyi'dɔ 23	plus
potato de terre	po'piter 16	potato
posséder	du 19	to have, possess
potiner	mima'da 22	to gossip
poulet	gorn'o 19	chicken (indef.)
pour	se 28	for
pourquoi	i fo se 22	why
pouvoir	hin 29	can/may
premier	si'tina 13	first
près de	man 13	near
probablement	hambara 20	probably
prochain	si'tina 13	next
propre	hanan 9	clean (def./indef. sg.)
propriétaire	koy 23	owner (indef.)
propriétaire	koyo 23	owner (def.)
quand	wati fo 2	when
quand	wati ka' 30	when
quarante	woytatyi 23	forty

quatre	tatyi	14	four
quatre-vingts	wohakku	23	eighty
que	ka'	14	that (relative)
que	nda	25	than
quel	fo	11	which, what
quelque chose	hay fo	29	something
quelque part	no'gu fo	29	somewhere
quelqu'un	boro fo	29	someone
qu'est-ce que	i fo	16	what
qui	ka'	14	that (relative)
qui	may	7	who
quoi	i fo	16	what
rester	goro	19	to remain
réunion	marga	29	meeting (def./indef.)
revenir	ye	27	to return
riz	mo	21	rice (indef. sg.)
riz	mwa	21	rice (def. sg.)
sa	a	6	his/her
s'accoutumer, à	dona	22	to be in the habit of
saison des pluies	kaydiya	18	rainy season (def./indef.)
sale	zibi	9	dirty (def./indef. sg.)
salut	fo	30	greeting (def./indef.)
samedi	asipti	20	Saturday (indef.)
sans	si	23	without
santé	bani	1	health (indef.)
s'appeler	ma	7	to call, name
s'arrêter	kay	13	to stop
s'asseoir	goro	22	to sit
se coucher	kan	1	to lie down
semaine	habo	27	week (def.)
semaine	habu	27	week (indef.)
semaine dernière	habo ka' bisa	27	last week
semaine prochaine	habu bene	27	next week
semer	duma	16	to sow
sentir	ma	26	to feel

sept	iye	19	seven
serrer	ka'kan	26	to oppress
ses	a	6	his/her
se tenir debout	kay	22	to stand
seul	hinne	28	alone
si	de	30	if
six	iddu	19	six
sœur d'un male	woyme	6	sister of a male (def. indef.)
soi-même	bo'	28	oneself (def.)
soi-même	bumbey	21	oneself (def. pl.)
soi-même	bumbo	21	oneself
soir (première partie)	alasar	20	early evening (indef.)
soir (dernière partie)	almari	20	late evening (indef.)
soixante	woydu	23	sixty
soixante-dix	woyye	23	seventy
soleil	woyno.	20	sun (indef.)
son	a/	6	his/her
suffir	wasa	30	to be enough
suivre	gana	13	to follow
sur	bo'	13	on
sur	dahir	20	sure, certain
ta	ni	6	your (sg.)
te	ni	4	you (sg. object)
temps	alwati	20	time (indef. sg.)
temps	wati	21	time (indef. sg.)
tes	ni	6	your (sg.)
ton	ni	6	your (sg.)
toujours	wati kulu	29	always, any time
tourner	kubi	13	to turn
tousser	koto	27	to cough
tout	hay kulu	29	everything
tout	kulu	21	all
tout le monde	borey kulu	29	everyone



toux	kotwa 26	coughing (def.)
travail	goy 14	work (indef. sg.)
travailler	goy 22	to work
très	gumo 9	very
trente	woro'za 23	thirty
trois	hi'za 14	three
troisième	hi'za'ta 13	third
tu	ni 1	you (sg. subject)
un	fo 14	a/an, one
un peu	kayna 16	a little, a few
vache	haw 19	cow (indef.)
vendredi	hanberi 20	Friday (indef.)
venir	ka 2	to come
vers	hare 13	toward
viande	ham 21	meat (indef. sg.)
viande	hamo 21	meat (def. sg.)
vieillir	zen 25	to age
village	kwara 1	village (def./indef.)
villages	kwarey 11	villages (def.)
vingt	woro'ka 23	twenty
voici	he 11	here is, here are
voilà	he 11	there is, there are
voir	di 4	to see
voitures	motey 13	buses, trucks, cars (def.)
vomir	yeri 27	to vomit
vomissement	yero 26	vomiting (def.)
vos	aran 6	your (pl.)
vouloir	ba 23	to want, need
vous	aran 4	you (pl. object)
vous	aran 1	you (pl. subject)
votre	aran 6	your (pl.)